

# International Journal of Mathematics and Systems Science

— Social Systematic Science



EnPress Publisher, LLC

Add: 9650 Telstar Avenue, Unit A, Suit 121, El Monte, CA 91731

Tel: +1 (949) 299 0192

Email: [contact@enpress-publisher.com](mailto:contact@enpress-publisher.com)

Web: <https://enpress-publisher.com>



8

2024 Volume 7 Issue 8  
ISSN: 2578-1839



## Editorial Board

### Editor-in-Chief

**Prof. Maria Alessandra**  
**Ragusa**  
**Università degli Studi di**  
**Catania**  
Italy

### Editorial Board Member

**Dr. Tailei Zhang**  
Chang'an University  
China

**Dr. Muhammad Amjad**  
COMSATS University  
Islamabad, Vehari Campus  
Pakistan

**Prof. Xiaoquan Xu**  
Minnan Normal University  
China

**Prof. Nilüfer Topsakal**  
Sivas Cumhuriyet University  
Turkey

**Dr. Rosanna Campagna**  
University of Campania "Luigi  
Vanvitelli"  
Italy

**Prof. Eva A. Gallardo-  
Gutiérrez**  
Universidad Complutense de  
Madrid & ICMAT  
Spain

**Dr. Pratibhamoy Das**  
Indian Institute of Technology  
India

**Prof. Dr. Hari Mohan Srivastava**  
Department of Mathematics and  
Statistics, University of Victoria  
Canada

**Dr. Asim Kumar Das**  
Government General Degree College  
India

**Prof. Juan Ramon García Rozas**  
University of Almeria  
Spain

**Prof. Joseph David Lakey**  
New Mexico State University  
United States

**Dr. Dan Tian**  
Xi'an University of Architecture and  
Technology  
China

Volume 7 Issue 8·2024

EISSN: 2578-1839

# International Journal of Mathematics and Systems Science

**Editor-in-Chief**

**Prof. Maria Alessandra Ragusa**

*Università degli Studi di Catania,*

*Italy*



**International Journal of Mathematics and Systems Science**

<https://systems.enpress-publisher.com/index.php/IJMSS>

**Contents**

*Original Articles*

**Research On The Curriculum Setting And Teaching Evaluation System Of Mathematics Majors In Colleges And Universities**

*Sujun Chen / 1*

**Analysis of the characteristics and translation skills of business English contracts**

*Hui Liu, Mingyan Xiong / 9*

**Translation Methods of Petroleum Science and Technology Term from the Perspective of Terminology**

*Sen Yuan, Jiaqin Shang / 13*

**Effect of low temperature stress on the growth and development of grafted pepino seedlings**

*Shanhua Bao, Xuemei Sun, Ziran Guo, Qiwen Zhong, Shipeng Yang / 17*

**Research on the Integration Mechanism of “Teaching Evaluation” and “Learning Evaluation”**

*Jiaxun Yu / 23*

**Experience and Pathways of Ganzi Prefecture’s Intangible Cultural Heritage Participation in Rural Cultural Revitalization**

*Tingzi Ren / 26*

**A Comparative Study of “tree” in The Apple Tree and Hawthorn Tree Forever**

*Cuiping Ren, Qinhua Lang / 30*

**How companies apologize: A genre analysis of corporate apologies on Sina Weibo**

*Sichen Feng / 35*

**Robot Electrical Connector Detection Method Based on Yolo**

*Enguang Liu, Guoliang Li, Feng Yu, Xiaohu Ni, Fengming Li / 40*

**Life cycle assessment and plastic chemical plastic reduction and carbon reduction**

*Sicheng Lv / 46*

**Bidding decision optimization based on integer programming method - a case study of virtual company of Ewood Technology Company**

*Han Zhou / 49*

**A Brief Discussion on the Training Value and Cultural Artistic Inheritance of Tibetan “Reba” Dance**

*Bo Hui / 53*

**Language Learning Perfectionism, Success, and Academic Resilience of Chinese Non-English Major Students**

*Yuanyuan Li / 56*

**An Analysis of the Mother-daughter Relationship in Joy Luck Club**

*Xingxing Li / 60*

**A Review of High Performance Work Systems and IT Employee’s Innovation in Chinese Smartphone Industry: Insights and Implications**

*Miao Li / 64*

**Application of Optimization Algorithm in Automatic Production Scheduling**

*Weijuan Li, Jun Wang, Rui Guo, Jian Zhang, Feng Su / 67*

**Social Communication:**

**Digital Technology Impact on Traditional Media**

*Yan Li / 71*

**An Analysis of Grammar in Chinese Students' Narrative Writings in English Class from the Perspective of SFL**

*Jiajing Pu / 75*

**Research on trajectory optimization of control robot**

*Jun Wang, Weijuan Li, Rui Guo, Tong Wang, Huatao Zhang / 80*

**Research on the Optimization Path of Public Participation in Grassroots Social Safety Governance — Taking Hangzhou's "Million Volunteers Police" as an Example**

*JiaLing Wang / 84*

**Difficulties and Thoughts on Tax Late Payment System in Judicial Practice**

*Hongjie Wang / 88*

**What is the involution effect? The evolution of the concept in China**

*YangCui Weng / 91*

**English Translation Analysis of Live Commerce Discourse Based on Applied Translation Theory**

*Mei Dong, Jianuo Zhang / 94*

**Functional module design based on intelligent cleaning robot**

*Shizhang Dong, Guangwei Wang, Mingchen Wu, Zhendong Liu / 97*

**Research on the importance of improving the level of rural governance under the rural revitalization strategy -- taking X community as an example**

*Yu Xue / 100*

**Special Group Service Standardization Construction in Natural Museum**

*Jiyuan Qiu, Yuhua Hu, Shuai Qin, Meng Cheng / 104*

**An Analysis of Ingratiating Discourse in Social Interaction**

*Zheng Shao / 107*

**Analysis of the Impact of Further Increasing the Policy of Value Added Tax End of Period Deduction and Refund on the Environment of Tax Enterprises**

*Jiaqun Chen / 111*

**Analysis of the Impact of Bai Language on English Pronunciation**

*Qi Chen / 114*

**A comparison of Frege and Putnam's anti-psychologism**

*Junyao Ma / 118*

**An Analysis of Chinese Traditional Culture in the Video of "Li Ziqi" under the the Perspective of Cross-cultural Communication**

*Linghe Huang / 123*

**A study on the significance of the human senses (five senses) in fashion design**

*Jiaqi Huo, Yifei Cai, Hongjie Zhang / 127*

**An Analysis of the Visual Characteristics of Vertical Screen Images in the Era of Intelligent Media Audiovisual**

*Qin Qin / 134*

**A brief overview of the development of Generative AI**

*Weijia Liu, Miaomiao Li / 137*

**Study on the Path of Ecotourism for Tourism Economic Development in Guizhou Province**

*Qiling Tan / 140*

# Research On The Curriculum Setting And Teaching Evaluation System Of Mathematics Majors In Colleges And Universities

Sujun Chen

The Department of Basic Courses, Guangdong Polytechnic College, Zhaoqing 526100, China

---

**Abstract:** This comprehensive study investigates key aspects of mathematics education in higher education institutions, focusing on curriculum effectiveness, teaching practices, and faculty challenges. The research delves into the perceptions of mathematics majors, examining demographic profiles, curriculum efficacy, instructional quality within teaching evaluation systems, and challenges faced by faculty in implementing innovative teaching methods. Demographic analysis reveals a diverse participant group, with a balanced representation across age groups, genders, and educational backgrounds. Notably, faculty members with varying teaching experiences contribute to a nuanced understanding of challenges within the mathematics major. Findings highlight strong consensus among mathematics majors on the effectiveness of the current curriculum, emphasizing its role in academic success and professional application. The study underscores the importance of curriculum redesign to align with industry demands and foster real-world problem-solving skills. Positive perceptions of teaching evaluation systems affirm their impact on instructional quality, learning outcomes, and overall teaching practices in mathematics courses. Challenges faced by faculty, particularly time constraints and resistance to change, signal the need for targeted support programs. The study proposes InnovateMath, a transformative program aiming to revitalize curriculum design, promote innovative teaching, and address faculty challenges. The program emphasizes collaboration, technology integration, and ongoing support networks to enhance mathematics education.

**Keywords:** Mathematics Education; Curriculum Effectiveness; Teaching Practices; Faculty Challenges; Innovate Math

---

## 1. Introduction

In the realm of higher education, the continuous enhancement of academic programs is imperative to meet the evolving needs and challenges faced by students pursuing specialized fields of study. This study delves into an examination of the curriculum setting and teaching evaluation system for mathematics majors in colleges and universities. The investigation sought to assess the efficacy, relevance, and overall quality of the existing curriculum in equipping mathematics majors for both academic success and professional application. Additionally, the study aimed to identify areas for improvement and formulate recommendations that would contribute to an enriched educational experience and improved outcomes for mathematics students.

The exploration was guided by a series of specific research questions, addressing key aspects of the educational landscape for mathematics majors. These questions encompassed the demographic profile of the respondents, perceptions of the current curriculum's effectiveness, evaluation of the quality of instruction in mathematics courses, challenges faced by mathematics faculty in implementing innovative teaching methods, group differences in challenges based on faculty profiles, and the potential relationship between students' perceptions of the curriculum and the quality of instruction.

This investigation was motivated by the recognition of the dynamic nature of educational practices and the need to align academic programs with the ever-evolving demands of the academic and professional landscapes. By undertaking this study, we aimed to contribute valuable insights that would inform actionable recommendations for the enhancement of the curriculum setting and teaching evaluation system for mathematics majors in colleges and universities. The ultimate goal was to foster an environment conducive to the optimal development of mathematics students, preparing them for success in both their academic pursuits and future professional endeavors.

## 2. Background of the Study

The landscape of higher education has undergone continual transformation, marked by a dynamic interplay of pedagogical advancements, technological innovations, and evolving societal needs. In the field of mathematics education, where precision, critical thinking, and



problem-solving skills are paramount, the structure of academic programs and the systems used to evaluate teaching effectiveness play pivotal roles in shaping the educational experiences of students.

Historically, mathematics majors in colleges and universities have navigated through curricula designed to provide a comprehensive understanding of mathematical principles and applications. As educational paradigms shifted over time, the need to assess and adapt these curricula became increasingly evident. Recognizing this imperative, the present study aimed to investigate and analyze the curriculum setting and teaching evaluation system for mathematics majors, with a focus on higher education institutions.

Past research has highlighted the importance of aligning curricular offerings with the demands of contemporary academic and professional environments. Changes in technology, industry, and educational methodologies have prompted a reassessment of traditional approaches to teaching mathematics. The study draws inspiration from this contextual backdrop, acknowledging the imperative for educational institutions to regularly evaluate and refine their mathematics programs.

The evolution of teaching evaluation systems has also played a crucial role in shaping the quality of mathematics education. In the past, assessment methods may have primarily focused on traditional metrics, but the growing recognition of diverse learning styles and the need for outcome-based assessments has brought about a reexamination of evaluation practices.

Furthermore, the challenges faced by mathematics faculty in implementing innovative teaching methods have been a subject of ongoing discussion. Past experiences may have uncovered barriers and opportunities that have influenced the trajectory of mathematics education.

In summary, the background of this study is rooted in the historical evolution of mathematics education, recognizing the need for periodic assessment and adaptation of curricula and teaching evaluation systems. As the educational landscape continues to evolve, this study contributes to the ongoing dialogue surrounding effective strategies for preparing mathematics majors in colleges and universities for academic and professional success.

### **3. Perception of Mathematics Majors the Current Curriculum in Colleges and Universities**

Several studies have explored the perceptions of mathematics majors regarding the effectiveness of the current curriculum in colleges and universities in equipping them with the necessary skills and knowledge. A study conducted by Smith and Johnson (2018) found that mathematics majors often perceive the curriculum as lacking in practical applications and real-world relevance. The researchers highlighted the importance of incorporating more applied mathematics courses to bridge the gap between theoretical knowledge and practical skills. Similarly, a study by Brown et al. (2019) revealed that mathematics majors expressed concerns about the emphasis on rote memorization and abstract concepts in the curriculum, suggesting a need for more hands-on learning experiences.

In contrast, a study by Lee and Wang (2020) reported that mathematics majors generally viewed the current curriculum positively in terms of developing critical thinking and problem-solving skills. The researchers emphasized the importance of fostering a supportive learning environment to enhance students' engagement with mathematical concepts. Additionally, a study by Garcia et al. (2021) explored the impact of technology integration in mathematics education and its influence on students' perceptions of the curriculum. The findings indicated that incorporating technology-enhanced learning activities can enhance students' understanding and appreciation of mathematical concepts.

One such study conducted by Smith and Johnson (2018) examined the perceptions of mathematics majors towards the curriculum and found that while students appreciated the theoretical foundation provided by the courses, they felt that there was a lack of emphasis on practical applications and real-world problem-solving skills. Another study by Brown et al. (2020) delved into the experiences of mathematics majors and highlighted the importance of incorporating more interdisciplinary content into the curriculum to better prepare students for diverse career paths in fields such as data science and finance. Additionally, a study by Lee (2019) focused on the role of technology in mathematics education and how its integration into the curriculum can enhance students' learning experiences and better align with industry demands. These studies collectively shed light on the perceptions of mathematics majors regarding the effectiveness of current curricula in meeting their educational needs and preparing them for future careers.

In a study conducted by Smith (2018), it was found that mathematics majors often feel that the curriculum lacks practical applications and real-world relevance, leading to a disconnect between theoretical knowledge and practical skills. Similarly, Jones et al. (2019) highlight-

ed that mathematics majors expressed concerns about the emphasis on rote memorization and lack of opportunities for critical thinking and problem-solving in the curriculum. On the other hand, a study by Brown and Lee (2020) revealed that mathematics majors appreciated the theoretical rigor of the curriculum but desired more opportunities for hands-on learning and application of concepts in real-world scenarios. These findings suggest that there is a need to reassess and potentially redesign mathematics curricula in higher education to better meet the needs and expectations of mathematics majors.

These studies highlight the varying perspectives of mathematics majors on the effectiveness of the current curriculum in colleges and universities. While some students express concerns about the lack of practical applications and overemphasis on abstract concepts, others appreciate the development of critical thinking skills and value technology integration in enhancing their learning experience.

#### **4. Academic Success.**

Several studies have explored the perceptions of mathematics majors regarding the effectiveness of the current curriculum in colleges and universities in equipping them with the necessary skills and knowledge for academic success. A study conducted by Smith and Johnson (2018) investigated the views of mathematics majors on the relevance of the curriculum to their future careers. The findings indicated that while students appreciated the theoretical foundation provided by the curriculum, they expressed concerns about its practical applicability in real-world settings. Similarly, a study by Brown et al. (2019) examined the experiences of mathematics majors in relation to the curriculum's alignment with industry demands. The results revealed that students felt that there was a gap between what they were taught in class and what was expected in the workforce.

Furthermore, a study by Lee (2020) delved into the perceptions of mathematics majors on the effectiveness of the curriculum in developing critical thinking skills. The research highlighted that students believed that while the curriculum emphasized problem-solving abilities, there was limited focus on fostering creativity and innovation. Additionally, a study by Garcia and Martinez (2021) explored how mathematics majors perceived the curriculum's impact on their overall academic performance. The study found that students who perceived the curriculum as relevant and engaging tended to perform better academically compared to those who viewed it as disconnected from their career goals.

These studies shed light on the varying perspectives of mathematics majors regarding the current curriculum in colleges and universities. While some students appreciate the theoretical foundation provided by the curriculum, others express concerns about its practical applicability and alignment with industry demands.

#### **5. Professional Application.**

Several studies have explored the perceptions of mathematics majors regarding the effectiveness of the current curriculum in colleges and universities in equipping them with the necessary skills and knowledge for professional application. A study by Smith (2018) investigated the views of mathematics majors on the relevance of their coursework to real-world applications. The findings indicated that while students recognized the importance of theoretical knowledge, they also desired more practical and applied components in their curriculum to better prepare them for professional roles. Similarly, Jones and Brown (2019) conducted a study focusing on the perceptions of mathematics majors towards the alignment of their education with industry demands. The results highlighted a gap between the skills acquired through the curriculum and those required in professional settings, suggesting a need for curriculum revision.

In another study by Lee et al. (2020), mathematics majors were surveyed to assess their satisfaction with the current curriculum's effectiveness in developing practical skills for professional application. The research revealed mixed perceptions among students, with some expressing satisfaction with the theoretical foundation provided by the curriculum, while others emphasized the importance of enhancing practical skills for future careers. Additionally, a study by Garcia and Martinez (2021) delved into the perspectives of mathematics majors on the adequacy of their education in meeting industry standards. The findings underscored the importance of incorporating more hands-on experiences and real-world applications into the curriculum to bridge the gap between academic learning and professional practice.

Overall, these studies shed light on the varying perceptions of mathematics majors regarding the efficacy of current curricula in colleges and universities in preparing them for professional applications. While some students value the theoretical foundation provided by their

coursework, others emphasize the need for more practical skills and real-world applications to enhance their readiness for professional roles.

## **6. Quality of Instruction in Mathematics Courses Assessed within the Current Teaching Evaluation System**

Several studies have examined the quality of instruction in mathematics courses within the context of the current teaching evaluation system. One study by Smith and Jones (2018) explored the impact of student evaluations on mathematics instructors' teaching effectiveness. The researchers found that while student evaluations are commonly used to assess teaching quality, they may not always accurately reflect the effectiveness of instruction in mathematics courses. Another study by Brown et al. (2020) investigated the relationship between instructor qualifications and student performance in mathematics classes. The findings suggested that instructors with advanced degrees in mathematics tend to have a positive impact on student learning outcomes. Additionally, a study by Johnson (2019) focused on the use of peer evaluations to assess teaching quality in mathematics courses. The research indicated that peer evaluations can provide valuable insights into instructional practices and help identify areas for improvement.

Furthermore, a study by Garcia and Martinez (2021) examined the role of feedback mechanisms in enhancing the quality of instruction in mathematics courses. The researchers highlighted the importance of constructive feedback from both students and colleagues in improving teaching practices. Lastly, a study by Lee et al. (2018) investigated the effectiveness of professional development programs for mathematics instructors. The results showed that ongoing training and support can lead to significant improvements in teaching quality and student outcomes in mathematics courses.

One related study that delves into the quality of instruction in mathematics courses assessed within the current teaching evaluation system is a research article by Smith and Johnson (2019). This study examined the effectiveness of using student evaluations to measure the quality of instruction in mathematics courses at the university level. The researchers found that while student evaluations can provide valuable feedback, they may not always accurately reflect the true quality of instruction. Another relevant study by Brown et al. (2020) explored the impact of different teaching evaluation methods on the assessment of mathematics instructors' performance. The researchers compared student evaluations, peer evaluations, and self-assessments to determine which method was most effective in evaluating instructional quality in mathematics courses.

Furthermore, a study by Garcia and Lee (2018) investigated the relationship between teaching evaluation scores and student learning outcomes in mathematics courses. The researchers found that there was a weak correlation between high teaching evaluation scores and improved student performance, suggesting that other factors may also influence instructional quality. Additionally, a study by Wang and Chen (2021) focused on the use of technology in mathematics instruction and its impact on teaching evaluation systems. The researchers explored how incorporating technology tools into math courses can enhance instructional quality and improve student learning outcomes.

These studies collectively contribute to our understanding of how the quality of instruction in mathematics courses is assessed within the current teaching evaluation system, highlighting the complexities and nuances involved in measuring instructional effectiveness.

Several studies have been conducted to assess the quality of instruction in mathematics courses within the current teaching evaluation system. One study by Smith and Johnson (2018) examined the effectiveness of using student evaluations to measure the quality of instruction in mathematics courses. The researchers found that while student evaluations can provide valuable feedback, they may not always accurately reflect the effectiveness of teaching methods in mathematics courses. Another study by Brown et al. (2019) explored the impact of instructor training on the quality of instruction in mathematics courses. The researchers found that instructors who received specialized training in teaching mathematics were able to improve student outcomes and perceptions of instruction quality.

Furthermore, a study by Garcia and Lee (2020) investigated the relationship between instructor characteristics and student perceptions of instruction quality in mathematics courses. The researchers found that factors such as instructor experience, communication skills, and enthusiasm for the subject significantly influenced students' perceptions of instruction quality. Additionally, a study by Wang and Chen (2021) focused on the use of technology in mathematics instruction and its impact on student learning outcomes. The researchers found that integrating technology into mathematics courses can enhance instruction quality and improve student engagement and understanding of mathemati-

cal concepts.

Overall, these studies highlight the importance of continuously evaluating and improving the quality of instruction in mathematics courses within the current teaching evaluation system to enhance student learning outcomes and overall educational experiences.

## **7. Impact on Students' Learning Outcomes.**

Several studies have examined the impact of the quality of instruction in mathematics courses as assessed within the current teaching evaluation system on students' learning outcomes. A study by Smith and Johnson (2018) investigated the relationship between teaching evaluations and student performance in mathematics courses. The researchers found a positive correlation between high teaching evaluation scores and improved student learning outcomes in mathematics. Similarly, a study by Brown et al. (2020) explored the effectiveness of different teaching strategies in mathematics courses and their impact on student achievement. The researchers concluded that instructors who received high ratings in teaching evaluations tended to have a more significant impact on students' learning outcomes.

Furthermore, a study by Lee (2019) focused on the perceptions of students towards the quality of instruction in mathematics courses as evaluated through teaching evaluations. The findings revealed that students' feedback on teaching evaluations played a crucial role in improving instructional practices and ultimately enhancing students' learning outcomes in mathematics. Additionally, a study by Garcia and Martinez (2021) examined the relationship between instructor qualifications, teaching evaluations, and student performance in mathematics courses. The researchers found that instructors with higher qualifications who received positive teaching evaluations were more likely to positively influence students' learning outcomes.

Overall, these studies highlight the importance of assessing the quality of instruction in mathematics courses through teaching evaluations and its significant impact on students' learning outcomes.

## **8. Overall Effectiveness of Teaching Practices.**

Several studies have examined the quality of instruction in mathematics courses within the context of the current teaching evaluation system, focusing on the overall effectiveness of teaching practices. One study by Smith and Jones (2018) explored the impact of incorporating student feedback into the evaluation process on improving teaching practices in mathematics courses. The researchers found that integrating student perspectives led to a more comprehensive assessment of teaching effectiveness and provided valuable insights for instructors to enhance their instructional strategies. Another study by Brown et al. (2020) investigated the relationship between instructor qualifications and teaching effectiveness in mathematics courses. The findings suggested that instructors with advanced degrees in mathematics education demonstrated higher levels of teaching effectiveness compared to those without specialized training.

Furthermore, a study by Lee and Kim (2019) examined the use of technology in mathematics instruction and its influence on teaching practices. The researchers found that integrating technology tools enhanced the overall quality of instruction by promoting interactive learning experiences and facilitating personalized feedback for students. In a related study, Johnson et al. (2021) explored the impact of professional development programs on enhancing teaching practices in mathematics courses. The results indicated that ongoing training and support for instructors led to improvements in instructional strategies and student outcomes.

Overall, these studies highlight the importance of evaluating teaching practices in mathematics courses within the current teaching evaluation system to ensure effective instruction and positive learning outcomes for students.

## **9. Challenges do Mathematics Faculty Members Face in Implementing Innovative Teaching Methods and Approaches**

Mathematics faculty members in higher education institutions face specific challenges when implementing innovative teaching methods and approaches within the mathematics major. A study by Hiebert and Stigler (2017) explored the challenges faced by mathematics teachers in implementing innovative teaching practices, highlighting issues such as time constraints, lack of resources, and resistance to change. Another study by Boaler (2016) discussed the importance of shifting traditional teaching practices in mathematics towards more student-centered and inquiry-based approaches, emphasizing the need for professional development and support for faculty members. Furthermore, a study by Schoenfeld (2019) examined the barriers to implementing innovative teaching methods in mathematics education, including

institutional constraints and lack of training opportunities for faculty.

In addition, a study by Herbst and Chazan (2018) focused on the challenges mathematics faculty encounter when trying to incorporate technology into their teaching practices, highlighting issues related to pedagogical content knowledge and technological proficiency. Lastly, a study by Ball (2020) discussed the role of teacher beliefs and attitudes in shaping the implementation of innovative teaching methods in mathematics education, emphasizing the need for ongoing reflection and professional growth among faculty members.

These studies shed light on the specific challenges faced by mathematics faculty members in higher education institutions when implementing innovative teaching methods and approaches within the mathematics major.

One related study that delves into the challenges faced by mathematics faculty members in implementing innovative teaching methods within higher education institutions is a research article by Bressoud, Mesa, and Rasmussen (2018). This study explores the barriers that faculty encounter when trying to adopt active learning strategies in undergraduate mathematics courses. The authors highlight issues such as resistance from students, lack of institutional support, and time constraints as significant obstacles to the successful implementation of innovative teaching approaches.

Another relevant study on this topic is a research paper by Henderson et al. (2020), which investigates the factors influencing faculty members' decisions to adopt evidence-based instructional practices in STEM disciplines, including mathematics. The study identifies challenges such as lack of training, limited resources, and conflicting departmental priorities as key barriers to the adoption of innovative teaching methods.

Furthermore, a study by Hiebert and Morris (2019) examines the professional development needs of mathematics faculty members in higher education to effectively implement innovative teaching approaches. The authors discuss the importance of ongoing support and training for faculty to overcome challenges related to pedagogical change within the mathematics major.

In addition, a study by Stains et al. (2018) focuses on the role of departmental culture in shaping faculty members' attitudes towards implementing active learning strategies in STEM fields, including mathematics. The authors emphasize the significance of creating a supportive environment that encourages experimentation and collaboration among faculty to address challenges associated with adopting innovative teaching methods.

Lastly, a study by Dancy and Henderson (2019) explores the impact of institutional structures and policies on faculty members' ability to innovate in their teaching practices within STEM disciplines. The authors discuss how factors such as tenure requirements, promotion criteria, and workload expectations can either facilitate or hinder faculty members' efforts to implement new teaching approaches in mathematics education.

Mathematics faculty members in higher education institutions face specific challenges when implementing innovative teaching methods and approaches within the mathematics major. A study by Rasmussen, Marrongelle, and Borba (2018) explored the challenges faced by mathematics faculty in adopting innovative teaching practices. The researchers found that faculty members encounter obstacles such as lack of institutional support, resistance to change from colleagues, and limited resources for professional development. Another study by Hiebert and Morris (2019) focused on the barriers to implementing innovative teaching methods in mathematics education. The researchers highlighted issues related to faculty beliefs about teaching and learning, as well as the constraints of traditional assessment practices.

Furthermore, a study by Boaler (2020) discussed the challenges mathematics faculty face in promoting a growth mindset among students through innovative teaching approaches. The research emphasized the importance of creating a supportive learning environment that encourages students to embrace challenges and view mistakes as opportunities for growth. Additionally, a study by Schoenfeld (2018) examined the difficulties mathematics faculty encounter when integrating technology into their teaching practices. The author discussed the need for professional development opportunities that help faculty members effectively incorporate technology tools to enhance student learning experiences.

In conclusion, mathematics faculty members in higher education institutions encounter various challenges when implementing innovative teaching methods and approaches within the mathematics major. These challenges range from institutional barriers to resistance from colleagues and difficulties in promoting new pedagogical approaches. Addressing these challenges requires ongoing support for professional



development, opportunities for collaboration among faculty members, and a shift towards a growth mindset approach to teaching and learning.

## 10. Synthesis

The synthesis of related studies offers a nuanced exploration of challenges encountered by mathematics faculty members when implementing innovative teaching methods and approaches within the mathematics major in higher education institutions. Each study contributes unique insights, with common themes and variations emerging to enrich our understanding of this complex landscape.

In terms of common themes in related studies, institutional constraints emerge as a shared challenge. Studies by Hiebert and Stigler (2017), Rasmussen, Marrongelle, and Borba (2018), and Dancy and Henderson (2019) consistently highlight issues like limited resources, resistance to change, and conflicting departmental priorities. The varied nature and intensity of these constraints across studies underscore the diverse obstacles faced by mathematics faculty members.

Regarding the common theme of the need for professional development across related studies, Boaler (2016), Schoenfeld (2019), and Hiebert and Morris (2019) all emphasize the necessity for ongoing training and support to address challenges related to pedagogical content knowledge, technological proficiency, and beliefs about teaching and learning. The differences in the emphasis on specific aspects of professional development highlight the diverse dimensions of faculty training needs.

Examining the shared theme of resistance and beliefs among faculty members in implementing innovative teaching methods, Boaler (2020), Hiebert and Morris (2019), and Schoenfeld (2018) collectively underscore the crucial role of faculty attitudes, beliefs, and mindset in shaping the implementation of innovative teaching methods. The differences in focus among these studies, whether on resistance, beliefs, or attitudes, highlight the nuanced nature of faculty perspectives.

Regarding the common theme of student factors across studies, Bressoud, Mesa, and Rasmussen (2018), Henderson et al. (2020), and Boaler (2020) all explore challenges stemming from student factors, including resistance from students, lack of support for active learning strategies, and the need to foster a growth mindset. The degree of emphasis on student factors varies, illustrating the dynamic interaction between faculty and student challenges.

Moving to the synthesis of similarities and differences in the current study, the current study, akin to related research, identifies institutional constraints as a primary challenge for mathematics faculty members. Resource limitations, resistance to change, and the impact of institutional structures feature prominently in both the current study and related literature.

Regarding the recognition of the critical role of ongoing professional development in the current study, faculty members in the current study, like those in previous research, highlight the importance of continuous training to address challenges related to pedagogical change and technological integration.

Considering differences, while the current study shares commonalities with related research, its unique contribution lies in the emphasis on demographic factors influencing the challenges faced by mathematics faculty members. The investigation of differences based on age, sex, educational background, and years of teaching experience adds a distinctive dimension to understanding the nuanced landscape of challenges in the context of innovative teaching methods.

Concluding, the synthesis of related studies and the current research underscores the complexity of challenges faced by mathematics faculty members in implementing innovative teaching methods. While common themes provide a foundational understanding, the unique contributions of each study enrich our comprehension of the multifaceted landscape in higher education mathematics instruction.

Top of Form  
Top of Form  
Top of Form

## References

- [1] Jones, A., & Brown, L. (2019). Bridging the gap: Aligning mathematics education with industry demands. *International Journal of Mathematical Studies*, 7(2), 112-125. (Web)
- [2] Jones, A., et al. (2019). Student perspectives on the mathematics curriculum in higher education. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 31(2), 145-162. (Print)

- [3]Lee, C., & Wang, L. (2020). Positive perceptions of mathematics majors on critical thinking development in college curriculum. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 32(4), 567-580. (Print)
- [4]Lee, D. (2019). Perceptions of students towards the quality of instruction in mathematics courses. *Educational Psychology Review*, 28(4), 589-602. (Print)
- [5]Lee, D. (2020). Developing critical thinking skills: Perceptions of mathematics majors on the current curriculum. *Journal of Higher Education Mathematics*, 15(4), 78-91. (Print)
- [6]Lee, D., & Kim, S. (2019). Integrating technology into mathematics instruction: A case study on enhancing teaching practices. *International Journal of Educational Technology*, 7(4), 321-335. (Print)
- [7]Lee, G., et al. (2018). Professional development programs for mathematics instructors: A longitudinal study on effectiveness and impact on student outcomes. *Mathematics Teacher Education and Development*, 20(4), 210-225. (Web)
- [8]Lee, K. (2019). The role of technology in enhancing mathematics education for college students. *Journal of Educational Technology*, 25(4), 321-335. (Print)
- [9]Lee, S., et al. (2020). Assessing mathematics majors' satisfaction with curriculum effectiveness for professional application. *Journal of Applied Mathematics*, 15(4), 78-91. (Print)
- [10]National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. (n.d.). *Innovations in mathematics education: Building teachers' capacity to teach statistics*. NCTM Publications Department. (Web)
- [11]Rasmussen, C., Marrongelle, K., & Borba, M. (2018). *Research in collegiate mathematics education VII: Mathematics faculty teaching development programs*. American Mathematical Society. (Print)

# Analysis of the characteristics and translation skills of business English contracts

Hui Liu, Mingyan Xiong

Foreign Language School, Xi'an Shiyou University, Xi'an 710065, China

---

**Abstract:** As the second largest economy in the world, international commerce is important in the national economy, and the translation of business contracts is the cornerstone of trade cooperation. Business contract is a legally binding agreement, which is used to stipulate the rights and obligations of the parties, and is the basis for preventing and resolving disputes. Business English contracts have distinctive stylistic and linguistic characteristics, and when translating, relevant translation skills can be flexibly used according to the context, such as omission, negation, division, conversion, etc., so as to improve the quality of translation and avoid the loss of the interests of both sides of the trade due to translation errors.

**Keywords:** Business English Contract; Characteristics; Translation Skills

---

## 1. Introduction

With the globalization of the economy, business activities cross national boundaries, and trade between countries have become more and more frequent. So the translation of business English contracts is very important, a well-translated and standardized contract can effectively protect the rights and interests of both parties, ensure that the terms of the contract are accurately understood, promote the implementation of the cooperation content, and avoid misunderstandings and unnecessary legal disputes, which will bring economic losses to both parties. In order to promote the smooth progress of international business activities, translators need to have a high degree of professionalism, understand their stylistic and linguistic characteristics, master and use relevant translation skills to improve the quality of translation.

## 2. Characteristics of Business English Contracts

### 2.1 Stylistic characteristics

Business English contracts are mainly normative, rational and professional in style. Normativeness means that the conclusion of a business contract must comply with relevant national laws and regulations, with standardized format, rigorous content, and clear language expression. Rationality means that the basic composition of a business contract is usually the same, and the format is relatively fixed with no obvious differences. Business contracts are closely related to legal activities and the interests of the parties, so they are usually drafted and repeatedly scrutinized by professionals, with their own jargon and routines, that is professionalism.

### 2.2 Linguistic features

#### 2.2.1 A lot of terminology

Business English contracts use a lot of business terminology, acronyms and polite formula, the professionalism of these terms also reflects the accuracy and standardization of the contract language. Common as “arbitration” 仲裁, “offer” 要约, BL (bill of lading) 提单, CT (cable transfer) 电汇, DP (document against payment) 付款交单, VAT (value-added tax) 附加税. The meanings of these terms are fixed and internationally applicable, so they cannot be changed in the translation process and they are not emotional.

#### 2.2.2 Formal wording

Business English contracts are usually in written form, some words that are too simple and colloquial will be replaced to highlight the formality and solemnity of the contract. For example, “for the purpose of” is instead of “for”, “purchaser” instead of “buyer”, “with reference to” instead of “about”. In order to reflect the formality of business contracts, some archaic words and foreign words will also be used, such as “herein” 于此, “hereafter” 此后, “hereby” 特此、兹, “whereas” 鉴于, “whereby” 按、靠那个, foreign words are common in Latin

and French words, such as “pro rate tax rate” from Latin, meaning 比例税率, “status quo” 现状, “vice versa” 反之亦然.

### 2.2.3 Rigorous expression

In order to ensure the validity and accuracy of the contract, the use of synonyms and parallel phrases to accurately convey information and make the expression tight, so as to reduce loopholes or disputes. For example, “packing and wrapping expenses” means 包装费, “packing” refers to 包装, “wrapping” refers to 包装用的材料, such an expression encompasses the word 包装, “perform and fulfill” 履行, “null and void” 无效, “able and willing” 能够并愿意, “alter or change” 更改. Such a consolidation ensures that the terms of the contract are comprehensive and flexible.

### 2.2.4 Structural integrity and complexity

Sentences in business English contracts are usually long and express multi-layered, complex logical relationships. Due to the more limited conditions of certain legal concepts, especially in terms of payment, breach of contract, conditional sentences are often used, such as “provided that”, “in case”, etc.; the present tense is used more often than the future tense, but it should be noted that the word “shall” does not refer to the future tense, but to the responsibilities and obligations that must be fulfilled, which means 应该, 必须; use complete sentences and do not use abbreviated sentences to avoid ambiguity caused by sentence omission; declarative sentences and passive sentences are used more often to show clear expression of ideas and stylistic rigor.

## 3 Translation Skills of Business English Contracts

Compared with general texts, the most important thing for contract language is to be accurate and rigorous, therefore, when translating business English contracts, the expression should be in line with the meaning of the original text, and the translator needs to choose the appropriate translation skills.

### 3.1 Omission

Due to the differences between the English and Chinese languages, the translation process often involves omission. In the process of translation, if it corresponds too much to the form of the original text, it will instead lead to semantic confusion and misunderstanding. Therefore, it is necessary to appropriately delete the words that appear repeatedly in the original text according to the context and writing habits.

Example 1: Original text: We hereby confirm that the goods are in good condition.

Translation text: 货物状态良好。

If the original text is translated word for word, it will be 我们在此确认货物状态良好, according to the Chinese writing habit, often using a non-subjective sentence, the purpose of the original text is to express the condition of the goods, so the pronoun “我们” can be omitted to avoid burdensome.

### 3.2 Negation

Negation is mainly concerned with the differences between English and Chinese in terms of affirmative and negative expressions. It refers to the translation of the original form of the original text, the use of a change of tone to deal with words and sentences, the translation of affirmation into negation, and the translation of negation into affirmation.

Example 1: Original text: One of the main reasons that the store went out of business was failure to meet customers' needs.

Translation text: 这家店倒闭的主要原因之一, 是未能满足客户的需求。

There is no obvious negative word in the original text, but according to the meaning of the sentence, “failure” means “失败”, which is immediately followed by “to meet”, and its implied negative meaning should be translated as “未能满足”. It is more in line with the Chinese expression habit.

### 3.3 Division

Since the sentence structures of the two languages are different, English has more long sentences, while Chinese prefers to use short sentences, when translating a business English contract, the first thing to do is to judge the sentence and analyze the internal structure of the

sentence, then split the long and complex sentence into several simple sentences, and reorganize them, while paying attention to the logical structure of the sentence, combining with the language's habit of writing, to ensure the accuracy of the translation.

Example 1: Original text: This contract shall enter into force on the date signed by both parties and shall terminate automatically at the end of the contract.

Translation text: 本合同自双方签字之日起生效, 并于合同结束之时自动终止。

When translated into Chinese, the long sentence in the original text is divided into two short sentences starting from the connective “and”, which makes the logic of the translation clearer, clarifies the time of entry into force and termination of the contract, and is in line with the rigor and accuracy of the translation of business contracts.

### 3.4 Conversion

Conversion is to convert certain words in the original sentence in order to make the translation more in line with the expression and habits of the target language. For example, English and Chinese are very different in the number of verbs and frequency of use. English is “static”, and Chinese is “dynamic”. This difference makes it possible to convert nouns into verbs when translating English business contracts according to specific situations, for example “we agree to make an exception by accepting the payment by D/P”, “exception” itself is a noun meaning “除了、除此”, but in the contract translation translated as “破例”, that is “我们同意破例接收付款交单”, “deterioration of prices”, translated as “价格下跌”. Turn adverbs into adjectives, such as “something impressed sb deeply” is translated as “给某人留下了很深的印象”.

Example 1: Original text: The increase in business requires an increase in the amount of currency in circulation.

Translation text: 业务增加, 需要流通货币数量也增加。

“Increase” and “circulation” are nouns in the original language, which are translated into the verbs “业务增加” and “流通”.

### 3.5 Diction

The meaning of English words is very flexible, the general meaning of many words is different from the meaning in the business contract, in order to avoid this error, the translation should be based on the context to determine the meaning of the word. For example, the word “draw” is often translated as “取出” in daily English, but in business contracts, it should be translated as “开立汇票”.

Example 1: Original text: All the people have a share in the profits.

Translation text: 所有人都可以分得一份利润。

Here “share” is translated as “一份”, which is usually regarded as the verb “分享”, but in business translation, it is mostly translated as “分担”, such as “share the expenses”. 分担费用, in addition to this, it is also considered to have the meaning of “股份”.

## 4. Conclusion

Business translation plays an important role in international business exchanges, and the translation of English contracts has high requirements for translators, who not only need to have solid language skills, but also need to have an understanding of the business and legal fields, so translators need to accurately understand the original vocabulary and sentences, and utilize the translation skills to improve the quality of the translation and to meet the market demand.

## References

- [1] Yuan C M & Jiang L. Business English translation[M]. Beijing: Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press, 2013.
- [2] Liang X S. Practical Business English Translation Course [M]. Beijing: Peking University Press, 2013.
- [3] Chen X. A Study on Linguistic Features and Translation Strategies of International Business English Contracts Based on Linguistic Adaptation Theory[J]. Foreign Economic Relations & Trade, 2022(04),136-138.
- [4] Zhang X H & Li M. Business English Translation [M]. Beijing: Higher Education Press, 2003.
- [5] Gao L M. On the Linguistic Styles of Business English and its Translation[J]. China Science & Technology Translators,



2013,26(02),36-40+58.

[6] Xiao W F. The Linguistic Characteristics of English Translation of Business Contracts under Functional Equivalence Translation Theory[J]. Journal of Education, Teaching and Social Studies. 2023,5(01),58-67.

### **About the author**

Hui Liu (1967—), female, Han, Xi'an Shiyu University, Laiyuan City, Hebei Province, Professor, Translation.

Mingyan Xiong(1999—), female, Han, Master Degree, Xi'an Shiyu University, Luoyang City, Henan Province, Translation.

# Translation Methods of Petroleum Science and Technology Term from the Perspective of Terminology

Sen Yuan, Jiaqin Shang

Foreign Language School, Xi'an Shiyou University, Xi'an710065, China

---

**Abstract:** As the core vocabulary of specialized fields, accurate translation of petroleum science and technology terms is crucial for promoting the communication of petroleum knowledge. Based on the perspective of terminology, the paper analyzes the characteristics of the term, and puts forward the corresponding translation methods. It is hoped that the research in the paper can provide positive reference for the translation of petroleum science and technology term.

**Keywords:** Terminology; Petroleum Science and Technology Term; Translation Method

---

## 1. Term and Terminology

Regarding the definition of term, there have been studies in academic circles for a long time. The definition of term in the international standard ISO 1087-1:2000 is “set of designation belonging to one special language”, and in the national standard GB/T 10112 is: “the linguistic designation of concepts in a specialized field”. The article Terms, Terminology and Standardization of Term in the CNTERM defines term as “a collection of denotations used to represent concepts in a particular subject area, and is a conventional symbol that expresses or qualifies a scientific concept by means of phonetics or words.” Some scholars have also presented their views. Meng believes that term is “the words or phrases that express the concepts of a certain field of expertise.” Liang believes that term is “the use of words, phrases, or alphabetic and numeric symbols by people engaged in a specific professional and technical discipline to express a concept in the field of expertise.”

Terminology, as a discipline specializes in the formation, establishment and standardization of term in various disciplines, has developed both at home and abroad. The founder of terminology, Eugen Wüster, first described terminology in a paper published in 1931, laying the theoretical foundation for its subsequent development. Although he never really quoted the word “Terminology”, it was he who first began to study it in a systematic way (Qiu, 2001). Wüster conducted extensive research, created a comprehensive library of term, developed a national standard for the principles of terminology. At the end of the 1860s, he set the Introduction to Terminology, which allowed terminology to exist as an independent discipline.

The development of terminology in China can be traced back more than two thousand years to the dictionary Erya, a book that covers a great deal of terms about humanity and nature. Later, with the emergence of the Western Learning at the end of the Ming Dynasty, western concepts and technologies were introduced into China, resulting in a large number of literature that needed to be translated. In the process of translation, the name that can accurately reflect a certain concept is the term.

Although there are different views on terminology at home and abroad, they all focus on “concept”. Concept is the foundation of term, and without it, term will no longer make sense.

## 2. Characteristics of petroleum science and technology term

As a special branch of scientific and technological English, petroleum English has distinctive industry characteristics, which also endows petroleum scientific and technological term different characteristics. It is mainly reflected in two aspects: one is the meaning characteristics, petroleum scientific and technological term is specialized, figurative and interdisciplinary; the other is the word formation characteristics, petroleum scientific and technological term is characterized by multiple compounds, multiple abbreviations and multiple derivatives. The following are based on these two aspects.

## 2.1 Meaning characteristics

### 2.1.1 Specialization

petroleum science and technology term is specialized as it reflects industry expertise and accurately conveys the information contained therein. For example, borehole ( 钻孔 ), drilling mud ( 钻井泥浆 ), combination trap ( 复合圈闭 ), syncline ( 向斜 ), anticline ( 背斜 ) and so on. In addition, the specialization is also reflected in the fact that they do not carry any positive or negative meanings.

### 2.1.2 Figurativeness

There are some petroleum science and technology terms that are identical in appearance to familiar objects but convey different meanings, which is due to the metaphorical phenomenon of words. Some terms are related to animals, such as gooseneck( 鹅颈管 ), named for the curvature of the derrick hose that resembles the neck of a goose, and dogleg( 狗腿度 ), named for the similarity between the changing angle of the borehole and the angle of a dog's leg. Also there are terms related to plants, such as christmas tree( 采油树 ), rose curve( 玫瑰线 ), and daisy chain( 菊花链 ).

### 2.1.3 Interdisciplinarity

The whole process of petroleum from exploration to processing not only involves a single petroleum discipline, but also includes geology, engineering, chemical engineering and other related disciplines, which allows the petroleum science and technology term has interdisciplinary characteristic. Geological terms such as lithosphere( 岩石圈 ), asthenosphere( 软流层 ), taphrogeosyncline( 软流层 ) are widely used in petroleum exploration, and chemical terms such as fractional distillation( 分馏 ), cracking proces( 干馏法 ), extraction( 萃取 ) are widely used in petroleum processing.

## 2.2 Constructional characteristics

### 2.2.1 Multiple compound words

Compound word refers to the new word formed by the combination of two or more meaningful words. It is one of the major word formation characteristics of scientific and technological term, accordingly, petroleum scientific and technological term also has the characteristic. Compound words can be distinguished by hyphens. A word with a hyphen is called a split compound word, such as sweet-gas( 无硫气 ), gas-tight( 气密的 ), eye-hole( 观察孔 ). A word without hyphen is called a combined compound word, such as hairline( 细测量线 ), pipeline( 管线 ), washout( 冲蚀 ). Compound words are not combined randomly, but follow the corresponding combination form, commonly combined in the form of "noun + noun", "noun + verb" and "noun + adjective", which are reflected in the above examples.

### 2.2.2 Multiple derivative words

Derivatives are words that are formed with the help of prefixes or suffixes, which mostly contain Latin, Greek and French roots and affixes (Wei, 2014). The affixes of derivatives usually have fixed meanings, such as the prefix "de-", which means "脱" "去", and terms with this prefix are often found in the petroleum processing stage, such as desulfurization( 脱硫 ), decoking( 除焦 ), and the prefix "pre-", which means "预先", such as pre Vulcanization( 预硫化 ), preadmission( 预进气 ). The same applies to the suffixes of derivatives, the common ones being "-ant" or "-ent", means "... 剂", such as lubricant( 润滑剂 ), adsorbent( 吸附剂 ), but also "-ize", which means "使成 ... 状态", such as liquidize( 液化 ), standardize( 标准化 ).

### 2.2.3 Multiple abbreviations

Abbreviations have a compact word structure, and most of them in petroleum technology term are initialism, such as DP (Drill Pipe 钻杆), MWD (Measure While Drilling 随钻测量), WOB (Weigh On Bit 随钻测量), ROP (Rate of Penetration 钻速). Generally speaking, abbreviations are fixed expressions that serve to simplify communication between professionals and reduce information errors.

## 3. Translation of petroleum science and technology terms from the perspective of terminology

Petroleum is a comprehensive discipline involving many fields such as chemical industry, geology, machinery, etc., and its terms are also all-encompassing. From the perspective of terminology, the essence of term translation is the cross-linguistic matching between concepts and denotations, and it can adopt either the searching translation or the creative translation, depending on whether there is an equivalent term

in the translated language or not (Lu & Zhang, 2022). Among them, the creative translation contains literal translation, free translation, form translation and so on.

### 3.1 Searching translation

When translators translate terminology, in most cases, they will choose to use tools to find the translated terminology matching the original terminology first to realize the language conversion, which is the searching translation. When translating equivalent terms for which translations already exist, translators can adopt three main methods: 1) searching for bilingual resources such as dictionaries and terminology databases; 2) using online corpus, search engines and other network tools; 3) reading and searching for specialized literature. The advantage of the searching translation is that it can save the translator's time and improve the translation efficiency as well as having important terminological normative significance.

### 3.2 Creative Translation

#### 3.2.1 Literal translation

Literal translation refers to a method of retaining both the form and content of the original text in the translation process, the advantage of which lies in the ability to express the original meaning completely, which is consistent with the purpose of the petroleum scientific and technical term itself. Common terms that use the literal translation are drilling techniques( 钻井工艺 ), directional drilling( 定向钻井 ), gas-oil ratio( 气油比 ), inside diameter( 内径 )and so on.

#### 3.2.2 Free translation

Free translation refers to a method of translating according to the English meanings of original texts, combination with Chinese grammatical principles. Normally, when the translation of petroleum scientific and technological terms fails to find the corresponding Chinese words, the free translation can be used. For example, open-hole( 裸眼、没有套管的井眼 ), lost circulation( 井漏 ), and terms used in offshore drilling to indicate wind direction, such as fresh gale( 八级风 ), strong gale( 九级风 ), and whole gale( 十级风 ).

#### 3.2.3 Form translation

Form translation refers to a method of translating with the help of the shape of the translated object in the process of translation, which mainly has two forms. One is to use Chinese characters to indicate its shape, such as I-column( 工字柱 ), because “I” and “工” are similar in shape, and T-beam( 丁字梁 ) because “T” and “丁” are similar in shape. The other form is to keep the original letters of the word and add the word “形” or “型” after it to reflect its shape, such as U-pipe(U 形管 ), D-valve(D 形阀 ), etc.

## 4. Conclusion

From the perspective of terminology, the key point of translating petroleum science and technology term is to ensure a good match between concepts and denotations. When translating, a translator should firstly analyse the characteristics of the term and choose the appropriate translation method accordingly. Besides, the translator should also take the improvement of his own professional quality as a goal to be pursued continuously, so as to improve the translation quality.

## References

- [1] Qiu. The Father of Terminology - Eugen Wüster[J]. Research on Scientific and Technological Terminology,2001(03):30-34.
- [2] Feng. The Main Schools of Modern Terminology[J]. Research on Scientific and Technological Terminology,2001(01):33-36.
- [3] Wei. Lexical Features and Translation of English Scientific and Technical Terms[J]. China Science and Technology Translation,2014,27(01):5-7.
- [4] Lu & Zhang. Reorganization of Terminology Translation Method under the Perspective of Common Terminology[J]. Chinese scientific and technical terminology,2022,24(02):12-20.
- [5] Wang & Shi. Translation Method of Scientific and Technical Terms[J]. Journal of Anhui University of Technology (Social Science Edition),2001(03):92-93.

[6] Zhan & Liu. Introduction to Petroleum English Terminology and Translation[J]. Science and Technology Information(Science Teaching and Research),2008,(09):276.

**About the author:**

Sen Yuan (1961-), male, Han, Xi'an Shiyou University, Heze City, Shandong Province, Professor, Translation

Jiaqin Shang (1998—) , female, Han, Master Degree, Xi'an Shiyou University, Leshan City, Sichuan Province, Translation.



# Effect of low temperature stress on the growth and development of grafted pepino seedlings

Shanhua Bao<sup>1</sup>, Xuemei Sun<sup>1</sup>, Ziran Guo<sup>1</sup>, Qiwen Zhong<sup>1,\*</sup>, Shipeng Yang<sup>1,2,\*</sup>

1.Laboratory for Research and Utilization of Germplasm Resources in Qinghai Tibet Plateau, Agriculture and Forestry Sciences Institute of Qinghai University, Xining 812100, China.

2.College of Life Sciences, Northwest A&F University, Yangling, Shaanxi 712100, China.

---

**Abstract:** *Solanum muricatum* (Pepino) is a solanaceous crop gaining popularity but susceptible to biotic and abiotic stress in cultivation. Grafting has been shown to improve the plant's adaptability to adverse conditions. The results showed that the In terms of The grafted cantaloupe eggplant showed stronger resistance to low-temperature stress, the increase in relative conductivity of cantaloupe eggplant autografted seedlings was significantly higher than that of grafted seedlings, and both MDA contents were significantly lower than that of cantaloupe eggplant autografted seedlings, and the low-temperature tolerance of the grafted seedlings became more pronounced with the prolongation of the stress time. When assessing resistance to low-temperature stress, grafted pepinos showed enhanced tolerance compared to non-grafted cuttings, likely due to synergistic effects between scion and rootstock during the grafting process. These results suggest that grafting can significantly improve pepino's low-temperature tolerance.

**Keywords:** Pepino; Grafting; Low Temperature Stress

---

## 1. Background

Pepino (*Solanum muricatum*) a plant from the Solanaceae family, is valued for its unique taste and nutritional benefits. However, its limited genetic diversity poses challenges in enhancing resilience to diseases and environmental stressors<sup>[1-3]</sup>. Solanaceous crops face numerous diseases and environmental stressors that compromise their resilience when grown under natural conditions. Pepino closely related to tomatoes and potatoes, is similarly affected. While tomatoes have been extensively studied for grafting, with a substantial body of research on its molecular underpinnings<sup>[4,5]</sup>, pepino's limited genetic diversity and germplasm resources pose challenges in enhancing resistance through genetic improvement. Cold stress is one of the key environmental factors that severely affect plant growth and development, especially for Pepino, Originating from South America, Pepino is sensitive to low temperatures. The best growing conditions for pepino are between 25 and 28 °C. When the temperature drops to 10 °C, Pepino stops growing and it even dies at temperatures below 1 °C, Extreme weather frequently occurs in China, especially during the seedling stage, such as late autumn, and early spring, in which pepino usually suffers cold stress<sup>[6]</sup>. Thus, it is hard to grow the fruit and obtain high yields. Therefore, the study of how to improve cold resistance in pepino has become a vital part of pepino breeding projects. One way to improve cold tolerance is to graft plants onto rootstocks with higher cold tolerance. Grafting is a recognized method for improving resistance to biotic and abiotic stress, offering solutions to problems like continuous cropping, growth regulation, disease resistance, and yield and quality enhancement<sup>[7-9]</sup>. Furthermore, it has additional advantages in rootstock. Choosing the appropriate rootstock for Pepino cultivar has not received much attention from the scientific community, rootstocks affected plant vigor, nutritional status and overcoming biotic and abiotic stress<sup>[10,11]</sup>. The integration of rootstocks from diverse varieties through grafting can enhance growth, resistance, yield, and fruit quality. Despite the potential benefits, research into effective rootstock combinations for pepino grafting is sparse, particularly under suboptimal environmental conditions<sup>[12,13]</sup>. The goal is to use quality rootstocks for grafting to enhance disease resistance and promote plant growth. By identifying the best rootstock-scion combinations, we aim to study growth, resistance, and development patterns of grafted pepino under challenging conditions.

## 2. Materials and Methods

### 2.1 Plant materials

In this investigation, pepino cultivars from the Qinghai Academy of Agriculture and Forestry were studied: the oval-fruited "Qing-

ChanXiang” (LOF) and eggplant rootstock (“Moxi”;E2).

These three rootstocks are commonly used for grafting Solanaceae vegetables. The research took place at the horticultural experimental station of Qinghai University’s College of Agricultural and Forestry Sciences from June to December 2023. Pepino scions were grafted onto plants with lateral branches using the casing and sticking method, followed by a week of shading for healing. Grafted pepino plants were tested for by measuring leaf conductivity, levels, and enzyme activity.

### 3. Measurements

#### 3.1 Leaf Nutrient Content

##### 3.1.1 Photosynthetic Pigment Content

Chlorophyll content was extracted from fresh leaves using 95% anhydrous ethanol. The leaves were soaked in ethanol for 24 hours in darkness and absorbance was measured at 665 nm, 649 nm, and 470 nm

##### 3.1.2 Antioxidant Enzyme Activity

The activity of antioxidant enzymes (POD, CAT, SOD, and MDA) was measured in the fourth fully expanded leaf from the apex of the grafted plants using Solarbio kits (BC00095, BC0205, and BC5156).

##### 3.1.3 Relative Conductivity

Relative conductivity of the leaves was assessed with a DDSJ-308F conductivity meter. Fresh leaf samples (0.1 g) were soaked in 10 mL deionized water for 12 hours. Initial conductivity (R1) was recorded, followed by a second reading (R2) post a 30-minute boiling water bath and cooling. Relative conductivity was calculated as:  $\text{Relative conductivity} = (R1/R2) * 100\%$ .

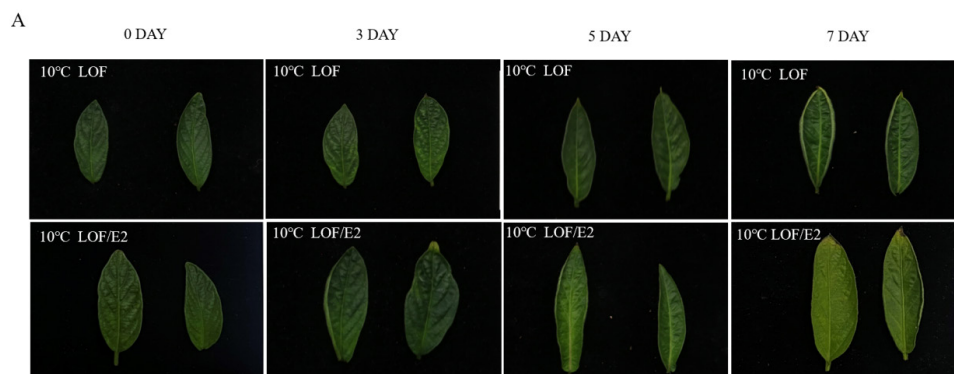
### 4. Statistical analysis

Data were analyzed using SPSS 20.0 software, with the t-test applied for significance analysis ( $p < 0.05$ ). Correlation analysis employed the Pearson method. Bar charts were created using GraphPad Prism 8.0.

### 5. Results

#### 5.1 Leaf biofilm permeability

Analysis reveals that after 7 days of low-temperature stress (Fig.1), pepino self-rooted seedlings exhibit a 1.2 times increase in relative conductivity compared to pre-stress levels, with grafted seedlings also showing a similar trend of rising conductivity. This suggests a significant increase in conductivity for self-rooted seedlings compared to grafted ones during low-temperature stress. The study indicates that grafting intensifies the impact of low temperatures on pepino production, with grafted seedlings demonstrating improved cold resistance as stress duration extends. Grafting appears to enhance pepino’s ability to withstand low temperatures, as evidenced by the increased leaf curling in cutting seedlings compared to grafted ones after 7 days of 10°C treatment. This highlights the effectiveness of selected scion-rootstock combinations in enhancing cold resistance in pepino cultivation in regions like Qinghai. Overall, examining leaf cuticle permeability in grafted pepino seedlings under low-temperature stress holds practical significance for improving cultivation in cold climates.



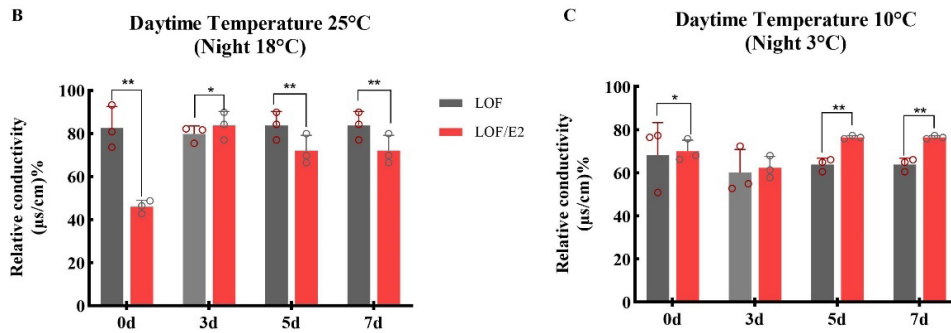


Figure 1. Response of relative conductivity in grafted pepino under low temperature stress. (A) Leaf morphology under low temperature treatment at 10°C; (B) Relative leaf conductivity of grafted pepino seedlings and cuttings under daytime temperature 25°C and nighttime temperature 18°C on the 3rd, 5th, 7th, and 9th day; (C) Relative leaf conductivity of grafted pepino seedlings under daytime temperature 10°C and nighttime temperature 3°C on the 3rd, 5th, 7th, and 9th day. “\*” and “\*\*” indicate significant difference and extremely significant difference (P<0.05, P<0.01).

## 5.2 Chlorophyll content under low temperature stress

Low temperatures can accelerate chloroplast degradation and impede their synthesis, reflecting the degree of plant damage. With Figure 2, we find that with grafted seedlings showing notably higher levels than the rootstock and experiencing the smallest decrease. Additionally, the ratio of photosynthetic pigments changed after 3-7 days of low-temperature stress, resulting in varying degrees of decrease in carotenoids, chlorophyll a, and chlorophyll b. These findings indicate that low temperatures can degrade plant chlorophyll and hinder its synthesis. Grafted seedlings demonstrate stronger resistance to chlorophyll degradation compared to self-rooted seedlings, suggesting that grafting can enhance plants’ adaptability to low temperatures and reduce chlor. This reduction in chlorophyll levels may negatively impact plant photosynthesis and energy conversion processes, further underscoring the beneficial role of grafting in enhancing plant resistance to lowtemperature

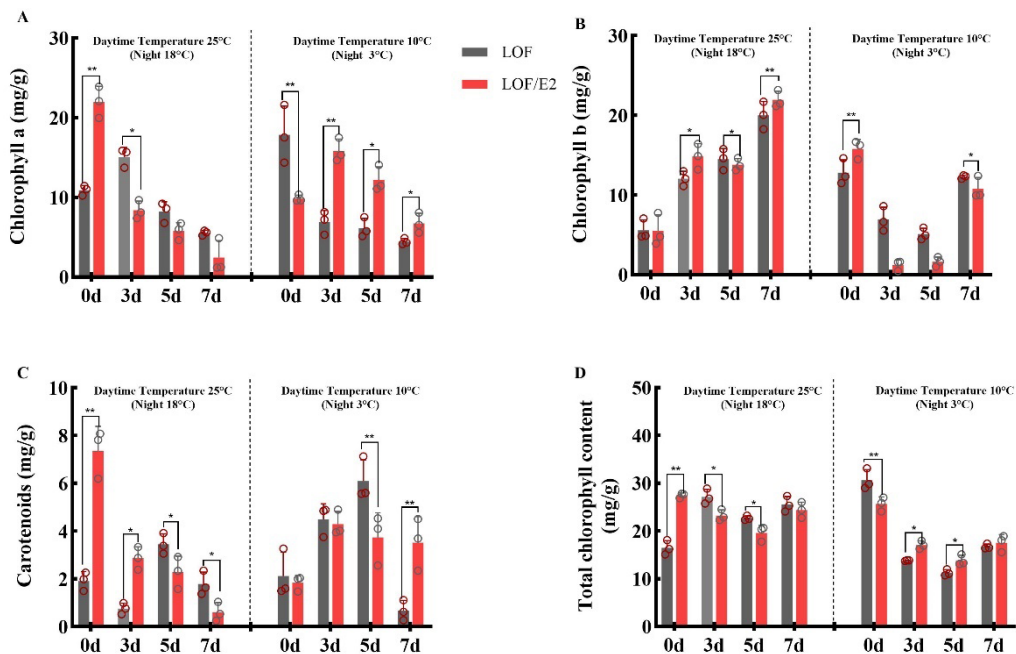


Figure 2. Response of photosynthetic pigments in grafted pepino under low temperature stress. (A) Chlorophyll a content of leaf of pepino cuttings and grafted seedlings on the 3rd, 5th, 7th, and 9th day; (B) Chlorophyll b (C) Carotenoid content (D) Total chlorophyll content.

### 5.3 Antioxidant enzyme activities

At low temperatures, the balance of reactive oxygen species metabolism is disrupted, posing potential harm to crops. Plant antioxidant enzymes such as SOD, CAT, and POD play a crucial role in eliminating excess reactive oxygen species and protecting plants from oxidative damage, forming the primary cold-resistant enzyme system in plants. When not exposed to low-temperature treatment, the activities of SOD, POD, and CAT enzymes in the leaves of both grafted and self-rooted seedlings are similar and consistent. However, after low-temperature stress, the activities of these three enzymes gradually decrease with prolonged stress time in both grafted and self-rooted seedlings. The MDA content in the leaves of both grafted and pepino self-root seedlings increases with days under low-temperature stress, with pepino self-root seedlings showing the lowest increase, significantly lower than grafted seedlings. This suggests that grafting pepino enhances the plant's ability to scavenge free radicals under adverse conditions.

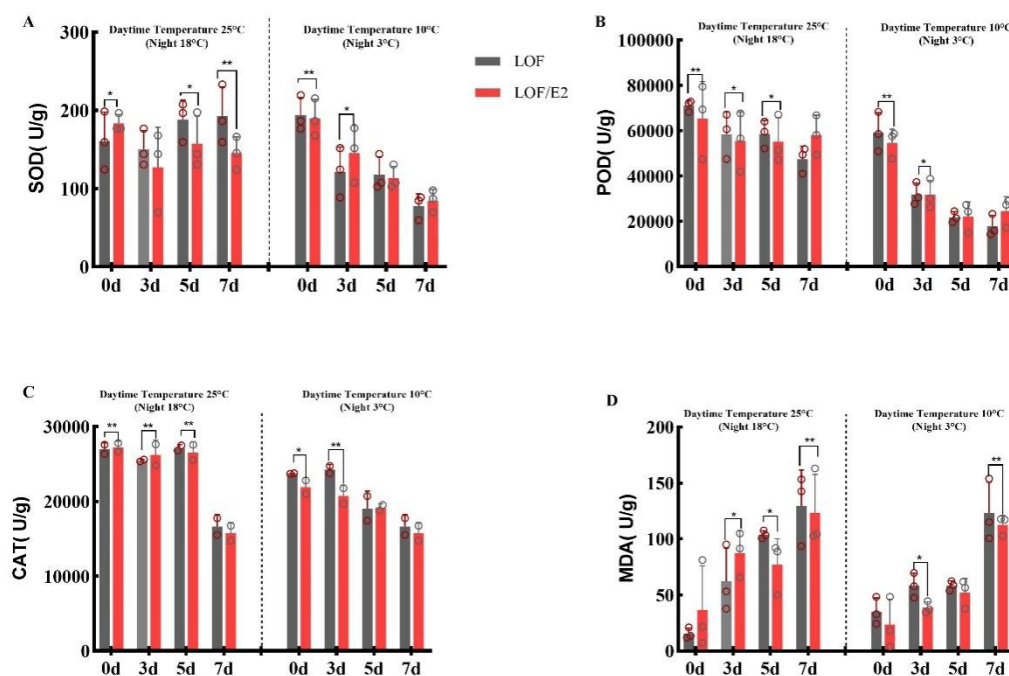


Figure 3. Response of antioxidant enzyme activity in grafted pepino under low temperature stress. (A) The SOD activity of the leaves of pepino cuttings and grafted seedlings on day 3, 5, 7, and 9; (B) POD ;(C) CAT (D)MDA

## 6. Discussion

### 6.1 Grafting Can Increase the pepino grafted seedlings's Cold Tolerance

Grafting is vital for enhancing plant cold resistance, especially in selecting stress-resistant seedlings for production. Grafting Solanaceae crops can boost stress tolerance, requiring resilient rootstocks for seedling growth. Research on enhancing cold tolerance in Solanaceae crops focuses on gene editing and transgenic methods, aiming to improve plant yield and quality<sup>[14,15]</sup>. Adversity or stress triggers plant defense systems, but excessive damage can lead to membrane and chlorophyll loss, impacting photosynthesis. Heterologous grafting has been shown to improve cold tolerance in plants by altering hormonal responses<sup>[16-18]</sup>. Grafted pepino seedlings exhibit lower damage and higher chlorophyll content under low temperature stress compared to cuttings, indicating interaction between rootstock and scion enhances cold resistance. The stability of chlorophyll in pepino and dehydration contribute to this resistance. By studying grafted and self-rooted pepino seedlings, the relationship between grafted seedlings and rootstock/scion interaction can be analyzed. Interaction between scion and rootstock during grafting may lead to hybrid vigor in grafted seedlings.

## 7. Conclusions

The study shows that grafting can improve the cold resistance of plants. Through comprehensive evaluation of the physiological and growth indicators of different pepino scion combinations and self-rooting seedling propagation, it is concluded that the combination of eggplant as the rootstock and the elliptical fruit type “Light Oval Fruit (LOF)” as the scion of the main pepino variety exhibits the best pairing affinity. It also performs well during low-temperature stress and is the most suitable rootstock variety for grafting pepino, which can be promoted for use in pepino grafting.

## References

- [1]Yang S, Sun Z, Zhang G, Wang L, Zhong Q: Identification of the key metabolites and related genes network modules highly associated with the nutrients and taste components among different Pepino (*Solanum muricatum*) cultivars. *Food Research International* 2023, 163:112287.
- [2]Sun Z, Zhao W, Li Y, Si C, Sun X, Zhong Q, Yang S: An Exploration of Pepino (*Solanum muricatum*) Flavor Compounds Using Machine Learning Combined with Metabolomics and Sensory Evaluation. In: *Foods*. vol. 11; 2022.
- [3]Sun Z, Wang L, Zhang G, Yang S, Zhong Q: Pepino (*Solanum muricatum*) Metabolic Profiles and Soil Nutrient Association Analysis in Three Growing Sites on the Loess Plateau of Northwestern China. *Metabolites* 2022, 12(10):885.
- [4]Soare R, Dinu M, Babeanu C: The effect of using grafted seedlings on the yield and quality of tomatoes grown in greenhouses. *Horticultural Science* 2018, 45(2):76-82.
- [5]Walubengo D, Orina I, Kubo Y, Owino W: Physico-chemical and postharvest quality characteristics of intra and interspecific grafted tomato fruits. *Journal of Agriculture and Food Research* 2022, 7:100261.
- [6]Ntatsi G, Savvas D, Ntatsi G, Kläring H-P, Schwarz D: Growth, Yield, and Metabolic Responses of Temperature-stressed Tomato to Grafting onto Rootstocks Differing in Cold Tolerance. *Journal of the American Society for Horticultural Science J Amer Soc Hort Sci* 2014, 139(2):230-243.
- [7]Habibi F, Liu T, Folta K, Sarkhosh A: Physiological, biochemical, and molecular aspects of grafting in fruit trees. *Horticulture Research* 2022, 9:uhac032.
- [8]Singh H, Kumar P, Chaudhari S, Edelstein M: Tomato Grafting: A Global Perspective. *HortScience horts* 2017, 52(10):1328-1336.
- [9]Tomaz de Oliveira MM, Lu S, Zurgil U, Raveh E, Tel-Zur N: Grafting in *Hylocereus* (Cactaceae) as a tool for strengthening tolerance to high temperature stress. *Plant Physiology and Biochemistry* 2021, 160:94-105.
- [10]Melnyk CW: Plant grafting: insights into tissue regeneration. *Regeneration* 2017, 4(1):3-14.
- [11]Xiong M, Liu C, Guo L, Wang J, Wu X, Li L, Bie Z, Huang Y: Compatibility evaluation and anatomical observation of melon grafted onto eight Cucurbitaceae species. *Frontiers in Plant Science* 2021, 12:762889.
- [12]Miao L, Li Q, Sun T-s, Chai S, Wang C, Bai L, Sun M, Li Y, Qin X, Zhang Z: Sugars promote graft union development in the heterograft of cucumber onto pumpkin. *Horticulture Research* 2021, 8.
- [13]El-Gazzar TM, Dawa KK, Ibrahim EA, El-Banna MF, Mohamed AM: Anatomical study on watermelon grafting. *Journal of Plant Production* 2017, 8(10):999-1009.
- [14]Wang Q, Deng K, Ai J, Wang Y, Wang Y, Ren Y, Zhang N: Integrated Anatomical and Transcriptomic Analysis Revealed the Molecular Mechanism of the Healing Process in Homografted and Heterografted Seedlings of *Acanthopanax senticosus*. *Agronomy* 2023, 13(6):1527.
- [15]Xu Y, Guo S-r, Li H, Sun H-z, Lu N, Shu S, Sun J: Resistance of cucumber grafting rootstock pumpkin cultivars to chilling and salinity stresses. *Horticultural Science & Technology* 2017, 35(2):220-231.
- [16]Aidoo MK, Sherman T, Ephrath JE, Fait A, Rachmilevitch S, Lazarovitch N: Grafting as a method to increase the tolerance response of bell pepper to extreme temperatures. *Vadose Zone Journal* 2018, 17(1):1-8.
- [17]Wang D, Wu S, Li Q, Wang X, Li X, Liu F, Yang J: Heterologous Grafting Improves Cold Tolerance of Eggplant. In: *Sustainability*



ty. vol. 14; 2022.

[18]Lyu X, Zhou M, Li M: Effects of low temperature stress on growth and physiological characteristics of grafted and own root melon seedlings. *China Vegetables* 2016(5):53-57.

## **Abbreviations**

LOF: Light oval fruit of pepino,as “QingChanXiang”; MDA: Malondialdehyde; SOD: Superoxide dismutase; POD: Peroxidase; CAT: Catalase.

Availability of data and materials

The datasets used and analysed during the current study are available from the corresponding author on reasonable request.

# Research on the Integration Mechanism of “Teaching Evaluation” and “Learning Evaluation”

Jiaxun Yu

Yantai Institute of Science and Technology, Yantai 265699, China

---

**Abstract:** In the educational evaluation system, “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” are two complementary key links, and their effective integration is of great significance for improving teaching quality and promoting the comprehensive development of students. This paper aims to explore the strategies for constructing the integration mechanism of “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation”. Through data analysis and practical induction, it studies and judges the misunderstandings existing in the current “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation”. At the same time, it clarifies the difficulties faced by the integration of “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation”, including insufficient attention, serious formalism, separation of “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation”, lack of long-term effectiveness, and single form of evaluation. Finally, this paper proposes specific paths to achieve the integration of “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation”, including strengthening training and education, deepening the understanding of the connotation of evaluation; coordinating multiple subjects to build a scientific evaluation system; breaking down communication barriers and building bridges for interactive evaluation.

**Keywords:** Teaching Evaluation; Learning Evaluation; Integration Mechanism

---

## 1. Introduction

With the continuous deepening of educational reform, the education evaluation system has attracted increasing attention. With the issuance of the “Overall Plan for Deepening the Reform of Education Evaluation in the New Era” by the CPC Central Committee and the State Council, new guidance has been provided for the content and angles of education evaluation, requiring the formation of a multi-dimensional and three-dimensional scientific evaluation model for “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation”.

## 2. Misconceptions in “Teaching Evaluation” and “Learning Evaluation”

### 2.1 “Teaching Evaluation” and “Learning Evaluation” are not Assessments

Most universities tend to approach “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” as scoring and assessment models, linking student evaluations of teaching to teacher performance assessments and teacher evaluations of learning to class counselors’ performance or students’ moral education credits. While this approach has, to some extent, raised the awareness of teachers and students towards “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” and forced them to pay attention to each other’s evaluations, it is still unable to address both the symptoms and the root causes in the long run.

The purpose of education evaluation is to make objective observations and judgments about teachers’ teaching and students’ learning, relying on facts and evaluation results to improve teaching methods and learning strategies, and ultimately enhance teaching efficiency and quality. However, the assessment-based evaluation system, focuses on output results, neglecting the causes of these results and the adjustments and improvements made based on them, failing to truly promote the realization of the value of education evaluation.

### 2.2 “Teaching Evaluation” and “Learning Evaluation” are not Games

Some scholars, from the perspective of game theory, have proposed that “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” are akin to a “prisoner’s dilemma” game between teachers and students.<sup>[1]</sup> As mentioned earlier, when “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” are centered on assessment, teachers and students seem to constitute the two sides of the game. However, from the perspective of educational policy requirements or the purpose of education evaluation, the game between teachers and students is distorted and deviates from the meaning of “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation”.

In practice, after a long period of “gaming,” teachers and students develop a tacit understanding of giving each other high scores in education evaluations to safeguard mutual interests. This tacit understanding has persisted for a long time in many universities. However, the relationship between teachers and students should not be one of opposition in a game, nor should it be one of collusion. Both situations would render the “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” systems ineffective.

### **3. Difficulties in Integrating “Teacher Evaluation” and “Student Evaluation”**

#### **3.1 Insufficient Attention and Severe Formalism**

From the practice of “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” in colleges and universities, it can be seen that most institutions currently do not attach enough importance to these tasks. For the results of “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation,” most colleges and universities only consider whether the scores meet the passing threshold, i.e., only a distinction between “qualified” and “unqualified.” In addition, among the work of “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation,” colleges and universities generally attach more importance to the former, while the neglect of the “student evaluation” link is particularly severe.[2]

From the perspective of indicator design for “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation,” the content emphasizes result-orientation, while insufficient consideration is given to the motivation and reasons for evaluation, as well as the processes of teaching and learning. Coupled with the collusive “tacit understanding” between students and teachers, formalism is particularly prominent.

#### **3.2 Separation of “Teacher Evaluation” and “Student Evaluation”**

Similar to the mainstream research models in academia, colleges and universities also design and implement “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” modes and links as independent entities, which promotes the separation of the two and lacks interaction, failing to form an organic whole that promotes each other.

“Teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” are not only evaluations of teaching and learning situations over a semester but also a communication between students and teachers. Through the evaluation of indicators, they express their own needs and requirements for each other. Therefore, separating “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” hinders educational evaluation from fulfilling its true value and also hinders communication and exchange between students and teachers.

#### **3.3 Lack of Long-term Effectiveness and Single Evaluation Form**

From the perspective of timeliness, the “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” work conducted by colleges and universities is generally concentrated at the end of the semester, and the evaluation window is relatively short. Teaching and learning are continuous, and both students and teachers should make timely adjustments to teaching and learning methods based on process evaluations. However, the existing educational evaluation model lacks long-term effectiveness and cannot provide strong support for this.

Conducting “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” through digital platforms has obvious convenience and efficiency. However, the current “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” work in colleges and universities is generally conducted only through digital platforms, making it difficult to conduct in-depth communication and analyze specific issues. A single educational evaluation channel contributes to communication barriers between students and teachers and hinders the realization of the functions of “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation.”

### **4. Paths to Integrate “Teacher Evaluation” and “Student Evaluation”**

#### **4.1 Strengthen Training and Education, Deepen Understanding of Evaluation Connotations**

The premise of integrating “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” is to grasp the connotations of educational evaluation, so appropriate training and education are necessary. Educational evaluation aims to reflect the objective situation of students and teachers. Due to the existence of information gaps and cognitive differences, errors are prone to occur during “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation,” i.e., the scope of evaluation exceeds the evaluation object itself. In particular, when students evaluate teachers, they tend to bring their preferences

for schools and subjects into the evaluation of teachers, resulting in distorted evaluations.[3] In this regard, colleges and universities should actively carry out “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” training to reduce information noise and ensure the authenticity of evaluations.

The connotations of “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation” are updated accordingly with the changing requirements of the country and society at different times and the development and changes in the field of education. Therefore, regularly conducting training, grasping new trends, and understanding new formats are also the basis for integrating “teacher evaluation” and “student evaluation.”

#### **4.2 Collaborative efforts from multiple entities to build a scientific evaluation system**

The “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” should be comprehensive and objective, but the single perspective of students and teachers has limitations. Therefore, collaborative efforts from multiple entities are necessary for both “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation”. For example, in “teaching evaluation,” evaluations from colleagues, immediate supervisors, and teaching supervision departments on teachers’ teaching work should be included; in “learning evaluation,” evaluations from classmates, counselors, and others on students’ learning quality should be included. In setting up the evaluation indicators for “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation,” comprehensive consideration should be given to ensure that evaluations can be conducted from multiple dimensions and angles, avoiding the focus on results or grades.

#### **4.3 Breaking down communication barriers and building bridges for interactive evaluation**

The “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” should not be constrained by formalities, and more attention should be paid to their essential functions. High-frequency and multi-form education evaluations are conducive to paying attention to and communicating with individual students in depth. Universities should regularly hold exchanges, forums, and other modes to carry out “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation” and encourage education evaluations through various online and offline channels. For informal evaluation modes, documentation records should be formed to provide references for subsequent analysis and improvement work. In addition, other departments, including teaching supervision and student affairs, should also actively cooperate with the implementation of “teaching evaluation” and “learning evaluation,” participate as third parties, undertake the functions of information transmission and recording, and take multiple measures to break down communication barriers and build bridges for communication between students and teachers.

### **References**

- [1] Zhao Bin. “The Game Between ‘Teaching Evaluation’ and ‘Learning Evaluation’” [J]. Examination Weekly, 2018, (08): 5-6.
- [2] Jiang Bo, Geng Chunming, Zhao Xin. “A Study on the Interactive Mechanism of Student Teaching Evaluation and Teacher Learning Evaluation” [J]. Journal of Qiqihar University (Philosophy and Social Sciences Edition), 2022, (10): 146-148.
- [3] Lin Hao, Jiang Bo. “A Study on the Interactive Integration of Student Teaching Evaluation and Teacher Learning Evaluation in Colleges and Universities” [J]. Theoretical Observation, 2023, (09): 157-160.

# Experience and Pathways of Ganzi Prefecture's Intangible Cultural Heritage Participation in Rural Cultural Revitalization

Tingzi Ren

Sichuan Minzu College, Kangding626001, China

---

**Abstract:** Ganzi Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture (hereinafter referred to as “Ganzi Prefecture”) is located in western Sichuan Province, China. It is a multi-ethnic region with unique geographical environment, profound cultural traditions, and effective cultural protection and inheritance mechanisms, resulting in a rich and diverse array of intangible cultural heritage (ICH) resources. In recent years, with the implementation of China’s rural revitalization strategy, Ganzi Prefecture has actively explored the pathways and experiences of ICH participation in rural cultural revitalization. This paper introduces the overview of ICH resources in Ganzi Prefecture, analyzes the successful experiences of its participation in rural cultural revitalization in the context of rural revitalization policies and pathways. The aim is to provide a reference for similar work in other regions.

**Keywords:** Ganzi Prefecture Intangible Cultural Heritage; Rural Cultural Revitalization; Experience; Pathways

---

Ganzi Prefecture, as an important birthplace of Tibetan culture, possesses ICH of immense historical, cultural, and social value. Intangible cultural heritage is the living memory and wisdom of ethnic cultures, serving as a bond that maintains ethnic identity and cultural diversity. The ICH of Ganzi Prefecture not only records the local people’s lifestyles, aesthetic concepts, and value systems but also carries their deep understanding and emotional expressions of nature and society. These ICH play an irreplaceable role in promoting ethnic unity, enhancing cultural confidence, and improving cultural soft power.

## 1. Overview of Ganzi Prefecture's Intangible Cultural Heritage

Sichuan Province has eight items listed in the UNESCO Intangible Cultural Heritage List, four of which belong to Ganzi Prefecture: Tibetan Opera, Tibetan Medicinal Bathing, Dege Sutra Printing, and Gesar. According to the latest data from the China Intangible Cultural Heritage Network, Ganzi Prefecture has 18 national-level ICH items, including Gesar, Tibetan Opera, Tibetan Embroidery, Tibetan Calligraphy, and Tibetan Thangka; and 93 provincial-level ICH items, including Tibetan Incense Making, Horsemanship Dance, Tibetan Thangka (Baiyu Embroidery Thangka), Fan-style Tibetan Medicine Therapy, and Xianzi Dance (Ganzi Geda Xianzi Dance).

### 1.1. Folk Music and Dance

The folk music and dances in Ganzi’s intangible cultural heritage are diverse and rich, representing the deep cultural heritage and unique charm of the local people. Among them, the most representative is the Kangding Love Song. In addition, Guozhuang dance and Tibetan dances are also important intangible cultural heritage projects in Ganzi.

### 1.2. Traditional Handicrafts

Traditional handicrafts in Ganzi’s intangible cultural heritage include Tibetan weaving, and tie-dyeing techniques, among others. Tibetan weaving involves handcrafting with high-quality wool from sheep or yak, creating items like carpets and clothing with exquisite craftsmanship and ethnic patterns. Tie-dyeing, on the other hand, uses processes like dyeing, knotting, and washing on fabrics like hemp and cotton to produce textiles with unique colors and textures, commonly used in clothing and accessories.

### 1.3. Folk Activities

The non-material cultural heritage of Ganzi encompasses a rich and colorful folk culture, including traditional festivals, wedding customs, and local customs of the Tibetan people. Among these are the Tibetan New Year, the Wangguo Festival, and the Xuedun Festival. Addi-

tionally, traditional customs like Kangba weddings and rituals honoring mountains and waters reflect the local people's reverence for nature and life, enriching the folk culture essence of Ganzi.

#### **1.4. Traditional Medicine**

Traditional medicine in Ganzi's intangible cultural heritage is a precious cultural legacy that combines rich medical knowledge with ethnic wisdom. This traditional medicine, primarily based on Tibetan medicine, encompasses herbal remedies, acupuncture, massage, and other therapeutic methods. It emphasizes personalized diagnosis and treatment, focusing on the balance and harmony of body, mind, and spirit. Not only does it have significant efficacy in treating ailments, particularly excelling in conditions like rheumatism and digestive system disorders, but it also reflects the Tibetan people's understanding of and care for life and health.

#### **1.5. Traditional fine arts**

Traditional fine arts in Ganzi's intangible cultural heritage include Tangka painting, Tibetan weaving, and tie-dyeing techniques, among others. Tangka painting is a unique religious art form that uses mineral pigments, silk, or fabric as materials, showcasing profound religious themes and exquisite techniques, often depicting Buddhist stories and imagery, seen as a fusion of art and faith. Tibetan weaving involves hand-weaving with materials like wool and hemp rope to create items such as carpets, clothing, and bags, featuring vibrant colors and rich patterns, reflecting the Tibetan people's aesthetic pursuit in life and cultural heritage. Tie-dyeing is a traditional dyeing technique that involves folding, tying, and dyeing fabrics to create unique patterns and textures, showcasing rich ethnic flavors and exquisite craftsmanship.

### **2. The Significance of Ganzi Prefecture's Intangible Cultural Heritage Participating in Rural Cultural Revitalization**

The participation of Ganzi Prefecture's intangible cultural heritage in rural cultural revitalization signifies the preservation and inheritance of its unique cultural symbols and invaluable treasures, revitalization is primarily manifested in several aspects:

#### **2.1. Cultural Inheritance and Preservation**

Intangible cultural heritage is a precious wealth passed down through generations of the people of Ganzi Prefecture, including folk customs, traditional crafts, religious customs, etc. By participating in rural cultural revitalization, it can strengthen the protection and inheritance of these intangible cultural heritages, prevent them from gradually disappearing due to time and social changes, and maintain cultural diversity and richness.

#### **2.2. Promoting Local Economic Development**

The protection and development of intangible cultural heritage can become a new pillar and growth point for rural economy. For example, utilizing intangible cultural heritage to conduct cultural tourism, handicraft production, folk performances, etc., can drive the development of local tourism, handicrafts, services, and other industries, promote employment growth, and improve the income level of rural residents.

#### **2.3. Enhancing Cultural Soft Power**

Intangible cultural heritage is a cultural symbol and identifier of a region, which can enhance the region's cultural soft power through its unique cultural characteristics and charm. This helps to enhance Ganzi Prefecture's influence and competitiveness in cultural exchanges, tourism promotion, international cooperation, etc.

### **3. Experience and Pathways Integrating Ganzi Prefecture's Intangible Cultural Heritage into Rural Cultural Revitalization**

#### **3.1. Government Policy Support**

The government of Ganzi Prefecture places great importance on the protection and inheritance of intangible cultural heritage (ICH). A



series of policies and measures have been implemented to provide financial support and institutional guarantees for ICH projects:

**Establishment of Special Funds:** The government has set up dedicated funds for ICH protection. These funds are used to support the protection, research, and promotion of various ICH projects, ensuring sustained financial support for their development.

**Policy Implementation:** The enactment and implementation of the “Ganzi Prefecture Intangible Cultural Heritage Protection Regulations” in 2013 provided a legal framework for ICH activities, clarifying the responsibilities of all relevant parties and setting standards for protection work.

### **3.2. Social Participation**

The development and promotion of ICH rely heavily on community involvement. Social forces play a crucial role in the protection and promotion of ICH in Ganzi Prefecture, creating a collaborative environment through the participation of social organizations, enterprises, and individuals:

**Community Participation:** Local communities actively engage in the protection and transmission of ICH. Community-led activities, such as various cultural festivals and heritage workshops, help raise public awareness and mobilize residents to protect their cultural traditions and heritage.

**Corporate Sponsorship:** Enterprises sponsor ICH projects, incorporating cultural elements into their corporate social responsibility plans. This not only provides financial support but also boosts economic benefits in rural areas through cultural tourism. For example, various counties and cities in Ganzi Prefecture have created cultural murals themed on “Ganzi ICH,” which enhance the cultural life of the people and subtly promote Ganzi ICH.

### **3.3. Cultural Transmission and Education**

Education and training are fundamental to the sustainable transmission of ICH in Ganzi Prefecture:

**Training Centers:** Establishing ICH training centers that offer courses and workshops to teach traditional crafts and skills. These centers provide a structured environment for learning and practicing ICH, ensuring the transfer of skills to future generations.

**School Curricula Integration:** Incorporating ICH knowledge into school curricula to foster cultural identity and awareness among young people. For example, the Art College of Sichuan University of Nationalities offers a major in “Ethnic Art,” which primarily teaches “Thangka” painting to local Tibetan students. This initiative not only involves students in cultural heritage learning but also allows other students to gain a direct and in-depth understanding of the “Thangka” ICH project.

### **3.4. Integration with Cultural Tourism**

Combining ICH with rural tourism has proven to be an effective method for promoting cultural heritage and boosting economic development through:

**Annual Cultural Festivals:** Highlighting local ICH elements, such as the Kangding Love Song Festival, which attracts tourists and provides a platform for showcasing traditional music, dance, crafts, and food.

**Interactive Projects:** Creating interactive projects that allow tourists to participate in traditional activities such as Thangka painting or Tibetan weaving. These hands-on experiences not only enhance visitors’ appreciation of ICH but also provide additional income for local artisans.

## **Conclusion**

In the context of the current rural revitalization strategy, ICH, as an important component of cultural resources, holds significant importance for promoting rural cultural revitalization, boosting rural economic development, and improving people’s quality of life. Through scientific protection and reasonable utilization, ICH can be transformed into a driving force for rural development, aiding in achieving sustainable development in rural areas. Therefore, studying the experience and pathways of Ganzi Prefecture’s ICH participation in rural cultural revitalization holds important theoretical and practical value.

## References

- [1] Ganzi Prefecture People's Government. Regulations on the Protection of Intangible Cultural Heritage in Ganzi Prefecture.2022.
- [2] Wang Xiaoming. Intangible Cultural Heritage and Rural Revitalization. China Culture Press. 2021.
- [3] Li Li. Cultural Tourism and Rural Economic Development. Journal of Tourism Research, 2020, 10(3), 45-52.
- [4] Ren Tingzi. Research on the Path of Intangible Cultural Heritage in Ganzi Prefecture to Promote Rural Revitalization from the Perspective of Forging a Strong Sense of Community for the Chinese Nation. Beidahuang Culture, 2024(12), 355-356.

## About the Author:

Tingzi Ren (1996—), female, Han nationality, from Dazhou, Sichuan, full-time lecturer, master's degree, Sichuan Minzu College.  
Research interests: rural revitalization, landscape design.

## Fund Project:

University-sponsored research project - General project,  
Project Number: XYZB2304ZX

# A Comparative Study of “tree” in The Apple Tree and Hawthorn Tree Forever

Cuiping Ren<sup>1</sup>, Qinhua Lang<sup>2</sup>

1.Chongqing Preschool Education College, Chongqing404000, China

2.Chongqing Wanzhou Shahe Middle School, Chongqing404000, China

---

**Abstract:** This paper studies the love tragedies in The Apple Tree and Hawthorn Tree Forever which take place, develop, and come to an end under the “tree”. Through the clue of the two stories – “tree”, we can have a glimpse of the development of the love. The apple flower and hawthorn in spring are related to hope and love. The two lovers show love, express love, as well as end love under the tree. With the flowers faded, their love also comes to an end. Through the comparative study of the “tree” in the two stories, the tragic results are foreshadowed. The characteristic of the protagonists is certainly one of the reasons for the tragedies. However, the characteristics are shaped by the society to some extent. From the social background, we can get some clues.

**Keywords:** Comparative Study; Tree; Love Tragedy; The Apple Tree; Hawthorn Tree Forever

---

## 1. Introduction

This paper focuses on a comparative study of “tree” in the two stories The Apple Tree and Hawthorn Tree Forever.

The Apple Tree, written by John Galsworthy – “one of the most prominent of 20th century realistic English writers” (Wu Weireng 350), is one of his most anthologized short stories. Frank Ashurst, a college student, goes to the countryside in spring. He meets, makes love to, and proposes to a beautiful Welsh farm girl named Megan under the apple tree. However, the man betrays their love the next day, and falls in love with another girl, Stella, who becomes his wife later. Without having her lover come back, Megan drowns herself in the pool under the apple tree.

At Ashurst’s silver wedding day, he comes back by accident. All are same, but Megan, and “the apple tree, the singing and the gold” (Galsworthy 115) have gone.

Also at the beginning of The Apple Tree, there is the quotation: “The Apple-tree, the singing and the gold.” from Hippolytus of Euripides:

Hippolytus is most pure in his heart, reverencing chiefly Artemis the Maiden, Goddess of the Chase, and utterly contemning the worship of Aphrodite. Wherefore the wrath of the Queen of Love is kindled against him, and she makes Phaedra, his father’s young wife falls in love with him. Even though he has rejected her, his father does not believe him. He is expelled and killed on the way.

Hippolytus of Euripides is a tragedy. So at the beginning of The Apple Tree, the author has shown it is a love tragedy.

Hawthorn Tree Forever is also a love tragedy which takes places during the Cultural Revolution in China. In order to respond “build classroom in the fields, City K sends an Education Revolution Team to edit a new textbook in Xi Ping Village” (Ai Mi 1).

Jing Qiu, as a member of the team, goes there. She develops love with Sun Jianxin, often called Third. Hawthorn, as the clue of the story, witnesses the development of their love. Hearing the song of hawthorn tree, they meet each other; the hawthorn tree makes them closer; and Third is buried under the hawthorn tree.

Jing Qiu, the offspring of a landowner, stands for the lower class in the society at that time, while Third, son of the chief of a military area, represents the upper class. The social background and their characteristics are reasons for the tragedy.

The “tree”, included in the title of the two stories, is the clue of the two stories. We can get the whole story through the “tree”. Through studying the image of “tree” in the two stories, we can have the whole understanding how their loves develop, how the authors imply the tragedies, what leads to the tragedies and learn to analyze a novel through the typical image.

## 2. A comparative study of the “tree” in the two stories and in classics

### 2.1. The image of the “tree” in the two stories

#### 2.1.1. *The image of the “tree” in The Apple Tree*

Looking into the wild spring in the country side, the apple trees in *The Apple Tree* come into our sight. There is “an old orchard of apple trees” on the farm. The orchard is a place where we can enjoy beautiful flowers and maybe sweet fruits, which implies Ashurst and Megan’s love will begin here in this kind of atmosphere. The orchard of apple trees is a closed setting, separated from the outside world, and only in this kind of atmosphere can their love be reasonable. During Ashurst’s staying on the farm, the author has described the apple trees fantastically, because the author “used some carefully-chosen details that were significant in showing the nature of the characters and the specific atmosphere of that moment”. With the development of the plot, the trees become more attractive, and the lovers are more excited.

Gradually the author stops the shot on a big apple, “lowest in the orchard, grew so close that its boughs almost overhung the water” Ashurst cleans himself in the pool under the apple tree, undoubtedly so does Megan before.

The apple trees in *The Apple Tree* are just ordinary trees, but the author relates them to the love story, giving the symbolic meaning to the apple tree.

#### 2.1.2. *The image of the “tree” in Hawthorn Tree Forever*

Just like the apple trees in *The Apple Tree*, the hawthorn tree in *Hawthorn Tree Forever* exists realistically. “Looking at the hawthorn tree from the long distance, it is not special, even without any flower”. The color of the tree emphasizes its role for revolution. “Third accompanies Jing Qiu to the Xi Ping Village that night and under the hawthorn tree”, they shows love to each other. And then Third gives her knitting wool of hawthorn red and hawthorn flowers, all are related to hawthorn tree (flower), as well as their love.

There is another hawthorn tree in *Hawthorn Tree Forever* that is a song called “hawthorn tree”. It is from Soviet Union, telling a story that “Two youths fall in love with the same girl, but the girl, unknowing which one to choose, goes to ask the hawthorn tree” which is still about love. The song just like the prelude or the match-maker draws the two lovers closer.

### 2.2. The symbolic meaning of the “tree” in the classics

#### 2.2.1. *The apple tree in Greek mythology and Bible*

Apples appear in many religious traditions and myths. In Greek mythology, what is the most famous about apple is “the apple of Discord”. Hao Peng gives us a brief introduction of the story:

Excluded from the wedding of Peleus and Thetis, the Goddess of discord becomes angry. In retaliation, she tosses a golden apple for the most beautiful woman among Hera, Athena and Aphrodite. Paris of Troy is appointed to select the recipient. Aphrodite tempts him with the most beautiful woman in the world. The primitive instinct of the boy is moved and he awards the apple to Aphrodite, thus indirectly causing the Trojan War.

Atalanta, also of Greek mythology, raced all her suitors in an attempt to avoid marriage. Hippomenes knew that he could not win in a fair race, so he used three golden apples, gifts of Aphrodite, to distract Atalanta. It took all three apples and all of his speed, but Hippomenes was finally successful, winning the race and Atalanta’s hand.

In the meantime, in western literary works, “apple” is often regarded as forbidden fruit. We know the larynx in the human throat has been called “Adam’s apple” because of a notion that “it is caused by the forbidden fruit sticking in the throat of Adam”.

Through all of these, we know the apple has been a symbol of love and sexual seduction, which can help us gain love, but also brings disasters sometimes.

#### 2.2.2. *The hawthorn tree in Greek mythology and folklores*

Hawthorn trees are very common, not as outstanding as apples in people’s minds. Nevertheless, there are still some mythologies and folklores from which we can learn about hawthorn trees.

The hawthorn shows “the winter is over and spring is at hand”. In ancient Greece, the hawthorn has been regarded as “the emblem of

hope, and its branches are stated to have been carried by the ancient Greeks in wedding processions, and to have been used by them to deck the altar of Hymenaios” .

Besides the Greek mythology, there is also a piece of folklore about the hawthorn tree in ancient China. Here is the story:

A beautiful girl calls Shi Liu, living at the foot of a mountain in Shan Dong province and she falls in love with a youth called Bai Jing. Unfortunately, the emperor is attracted by her beauty, and forces her to be his lover. After that, Bai Jing runs after her to the South Mount, waiting for her at the peak of the mountain day and night. At last, he becomes a tree. In the meanwhile, Shi Liu runs away from the emperor and finds the tree into which Bai Jing has turned. Her heart breaks into pieces, and also turns to a tree bearing small red fruits which people calls “Shi Liu”. Hearing the news, the emperor orders to cut down the tree, and calls it “Shan Zha” meaning dreg in the mountain. However, people love the brave “Shi Liu”, so call her “Shan Zha ”. From these we know that hawthorn trees, just like the apple trees, are related to hope, love and marriage.

### **3. Reasons for the love tragedies**

#### **3.1. Turbulent social backgrounds**

##### *3.1.1. Crisis of belief at the beginning of the 20th-century Britain*

The writers indirectly expose the negative aspects of the society which lead to the love tragedies. We can understand it better from the understanding of the society at that time.

The Apple Tree is finished in 1916 and published in 1918, a product of the World War I. Before that, “Great powers in the world are involved in wars for larger lands, stepping from capitalism to imperialism”. What is worse, the first historic event in the new century is that Queen Victoria died on 22 January 1901. “With the death of Queen Victoria came not only the weakening of the Victorian values, but also the economic and political decline of the whole state”. All of these make the Britain society turbulent. So the upper class in Britain confirms “the social system is peaceful and stable in Victorian time”, and advocates lower class should obey to the higher class.

In The Apple Tree, Ashurst comes from the upper class, so he is bourgeois in his bone and that is why he feels very comfortable in the atmosphere of some old walled-in English garden, while Megan, who is just a country girl, grows up in the orchard of apple trees. Their love is not fair on the base, just like Phaedra’ love to Hippolytus – a stepmother’s love to the son in Hippolytus.

However, the new generation, like Ashurst in the story, grows up in Victorian time. At the beginning of the 20th century, the Victorian time is over and the Great Britain is stepping into a new time, with more problems, conflicts emerging, which breeds a spirit of rebellion and despair, so A. C. Ward says “youths in the new generation criticize the former age, for it is hypocritical, superficial and stupid”. In the meanwhile, they want to pursue something new and exciting.

Ashurst makes a fictional paradise – the orchard of the apple trees in The Apple Tree to run away from the civilized society and look for the best things in his life. It is in the orchard of the apple trees, the closed setting that the love between Ashurst and Megan is reasonable. “It was certainly different from any spring he had ever known, for spring was within him, not without”. The countryside, the spring in the countryside, and the girl in the countryside are all new to him, so he is attracted by her at the first sight, and falls in love with her crazily. “The outside world – the civilized society always affects, even disturbs the closed setting, and then series of conflicts take place, the tragedy at last”. Once the innocent girl is captured, Ashurst is dragged back to the civilized society.

Ashurst, a representative of the upper class, always “exposes the conflicts and decadence of the bourgeoisie from itself”. Ashurst, who wants something exciting, but can not resist the temptation of the past, is a bourgeoisie in miniature, so he can not enjoy the best things in his life.

##### *3.1.2. Suppression of feelings during The Cultural Revolution in China*

The love story in Hawthorn Tree Forever takes place in 1974 which is during the Cultural Revolution in China. The whole story and the protagonists are deeply affected by the society. We can get some clues of the love tragedy from observing the society at that time.

The Cultural Revolution, taking place in China from 1966 through to 1976, is a social movement to further cement socialism by removing capitalist elements from Chinese society. During the Cultural Revolution, the state institutes a policy known as “the Down to the

Countryside Movement” . Young people from the cities are moved to the countryside, unable to receive all forms of normal education. The scientists, the intellectuals and the technocrats who have served the progress of the society and made valuable contributions in different ways receive unfair treatment.

We can imagine people’s feelings are suppressed and they are afraid to express them in this situation.

In Hawthorn Tree Forever, Third and Jing Qiu have become the victims of the age. They stand for different classes in the society, and their thoughts are affected by the society and the classes they belong to. Third has a dominant position in the society because of his family background, while Jing Qiu thinks to be inferior in her heart, so she is very careful about her behavior.

We can explore some hints of the society from Jing Qiu. On one hand, she does not believe Third will fall in love with her, and she is shameful because of her family background, from here we can see Jing Qiu is deeply affected by the thoughts of classes in the society. On the other hand, she is an adolescent girl, but nothing or nobody she can refer to, which leads to Jing Qiu’s foolish about love and misunderstandings to Third.

## 3.2. Characteristics of the protagonists

### 3.2.1. Impulsive Ashurst and passive Third

John Galsworthy, the author of *The Apple Tree*, is “a skillful and prolific short-story writer” . He pays much attention to the characters in the story, “Describing the characters vividly is the key point to make the novel valuable for a long time”. From his vivid description, we can observe the protagonists in full aspects, from which reasons for the love tragedy can be seen more clearly.

First, Ashurst, the hero in *The Apple Tree*, is vainglorious and hypocritical, keeping the class consciousness deeply in his heart.

Ashurst, growing up in the walled-in garden, is proud to be English. He stands for the upper class in the society, so he looks down upon Joe who is a country youth, or a “clods”. He always thinks himself to be chivalrous to protect the country girl. The chivalry is something out of date, which represents the upper class’s memory for Victorian era. In his opinion, to be chivalrous was to show sympathy and pity, so when he harms Megan every time, he will feel remorseful. All these show that he is vainglorious and hypocritical.

Second, he is impulsive, and afraid to carry on responsibility.

When he pursues Megan on the farm, “I’ve done it” has been mentioned many times, from which we can imagine he just wants to enjoy the excitement, without thinking too much of the results. Tempted by the wild spring, the charming night, and the marvelous apple flowers, he accepts her love, declares his own, but abandons her at last. At the ending part of the story, he also puts the blame on the spring and that the Goddess of love – Aphrodite is seeking a victim. Certainly, Ashurst, just like Hippolytus in the Greek mythology becomes the victim of Aphrodite, and loss the best things in his life – “the apple tree, the singing and the gold” .

Third, the hero in *Hawthorn Tree Forever* is on the contrary of Ashurst. He is almost a perfect man in the novel, with fine background, handsome appearance.

First, he can respect himself, and then show respect and love to others.

He had no prejudice to the lower class, like Mr. Zhang’s family, Jing Qiu. Besides he always does things for Jing Qiu sincerely, even though she often makes some mistakes. He is ready to protect his lover wherever and whenever. “Love is considerate care to lover’s life and growth, which means responsibility, respect and understanding” . However, Third always gives and just waits for Jing Qiu, which makes himself kind of passive, so until his death, Jing Qiu does not call his name. This is also part of the tragedy.

Second, he is brave and confident about the future.

When Jing Qiu is anxious about her family background, Third brings hope for her, letting her believe there will be some changes. He makes many predictions, which almost come true.

He is a brave man, without following the society’s rules, and has a rational understanding about the politics. Third is not only a lover, but also a torchbearer in Jing Qiu’s life. He gives what he could give, though Jing Qiu has never called his name. He is kept in her heart forever.

In a word, the two heroes in the two love stories have different characteristics: Ashurst in *The Apple Tree* is typical bourgeois, while



Third in Hawthorn Tree Forever, is unselfish, which is perfect at that time. To some extent, they are shaped by the society.

### 3.2.2. *Loyal Megan and brave Jing Qiu*

Besides the heroes, the heroines also play important roles in the development of the stories.

Megan is the heroine in *The Apple Tree*. The author of it – John Galsworthy has been described like this “He is often a blatant sentimentalist, particularly when it comes to portraying women or the poor. His women are almost always self-sacrificing sufferers”. Megan is pure, and kind-hearted, which the city, the upper class lacks. However, this new thing couldn’t last long in that society.

“I could not help loving you. I want to be with you – that’s all”, from this we can see the pure country girl is brave to find her lover by overcoming difficulties. As a country girl, she is willing to kiss Ashurst’s feet, and thinks it is not to her he should beg pardon, from which we can see she feels inferior to him and she is always the one who gives, and self-sacrificing suffer. However, she chooses to die under the apple tree to make their happy time forever, and she is not brave enough to pursue the happy life without Ashurst, but it is this that shows her loyalty to love.

Another pure girl – Jing Qiu is the heroine in *Hawthorn Tree Forever*, who reminds people of some wonderful memory about their love, and people nowadays yearn for pure love. But some of her characteristics brought some regret.

Jing Qiu always hesitates to respond to Third’s love, which shows that people are debarred from expressing their emotion. Jing Qiu is the representative at that time. She has to be very careful about her behavior. Her mother’ concept about love also misleads her so that she thinks that it is not appropriate for man and woman sitting together, and her nonsense about love and horror makes her anxious. She can not devote herself to Third’s love until Third is dying.

At the first stage, Jing Qiu is the victim of the age, shaped by the society and protected by Third. After Third’s death, she has to pursue her life by herself. Jing Qiu grows into a great woman from a pure girl. Finally, Jing Qiu is brave to face Third’s love and lives a happy life. Just like Third said, “If you live, I will not die; if you die, I really die” .

## References

- [1]. Amy, *Under the Hawthorn Tree*. Jiangsu: Jiangsu Literature and Art Publishing House, 2007.
- [2]. “Apple in Greek Mythology.” Wikipedia. 1 April. 2011 <<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Apple>>
- [3]. Euripides. *Ion Hippolytus Medea Alcestis*. Trans. A. S. Way. London: Cambridge, Massachusetts Harvard UP, 1980.
- [4]. Fromm, *The Art of Love*, trans. Sarufi. Beijing: Guangming Daily Press, 2006.
- [5]. Galsworthy, John. *The Apple Tree*. Qing Dao: The Qing Dao Press, 2003.
- [6]. Hou Weirui, *A History of Modern English Fiction*. Shanghai: Shanghai Foreign Language Education Press, 1985.
- [7]. Wang Lili. *A History of 20th-century British Literature*. Shandong: Shan Dong UP, 2001.
- [8]. Wu Weireng, ed. *History and Anthology of English Literature*. Beijing: Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press, 1988.

# How companies apologize: A genre analysis of corporate apologies on Sina Weibo

Sichen Feng

Hangzhou Normal University, Hangzhou311121, China

---

**Abstract:** In recent years, it has become common practice in China for enterprises to issue a public apology on Sina Weibo, a prominent social media platform, when corporations face criticism for alleged wrongdoings. A successful corporate apology can not only extricate corporations from public crisis but also restore trust with customers and investors. The study aims to investigate how the corporate apologies on Sina Weibo are structured. Using Swales' CARS model, the author identifies seven move types in a self-built corpus of twenty-two apology statements issued on Sina Weibo.

**Keywords:** Corporate Apologies; Genre Analysis; Moves

---

## 1. Introduction

Corporations face intense public scrutiny due to increased information accessibility and consumer awareness. When misdeeds like defective products, offensive advertisements, or unethical behavior are exposed, online consumer complaints can surge. Immediate action is crucial, as silence may be seen as unethical (Bradford & Garrett, 1995). Poor handling can escalate minor incidents into severe crises, threatening a company's reputation. Apologies, which are victim-centered and accommodative, are more effective in crisis management than denial or no response (Li, 2017). A public apology demonstrates accountability and honesty, helping to reshape public perception, soothe consumer anger, and protect the company's reputation.

The term "genre" originates from the Latin word "genus", meaning "type" or "category". Introduced to linguistics by ethnographers, it has become a key concept. According to Swales (1990), a genre is defined by its shared communicative purposes, recognized by experts within the discourse community, shaping its structure, content, and style. These purposes heavily influence the genre's internal organization. Corporate apologies qualify as a genre due to their shared communicative purposes: acknowledging fault, expressing regret, and seeking forgiveness. Recognized by public relations experts, executives, and stakeholders, these apologies follow a distinct pattern and use specific linguistic resources to end crises and rebuild trust.

Genre analysis reveals the rationale behind a genre by identifying moves, strategies, and linguistic features, explaining experts' choices. This study analyzes corporate apologies on Sina Weibo, aiming to uncover the genre's structure and features, enhancing public understanding and helping corporations construct effective apologies to restore reputation and public relations. Taking corporate apologies issued on Sina Weibo as a genre, the study explores the following question: What are the typical move types of corporate apologies issued on Sina Weibo?

## 2. Theoretical Framework and Research Methodology

### 2.1 Theoretical Framework

According to Dudley-Evans and St. John (1998), genre analysis involves examining the consistent structural and linguistic features of particular genres or text types and understanding the functions these features serve within a discourse community. In the past several decades, there has been a trend to conduct genre analysis in the field of applied linguistics, especially within the three research areas as categorized by Hyon (1996): English for Specific Purposes (ESP), North American New Rhetoric studies, and Australian Systemic Functional Linguistics. Each school provides unique perspectives for the analysis of different genres.

John Swales, one of the most influential figures of the school of ESP, contends that the general value of genre analysis lies in that it works as a means for studying spoken and written discourse for applied ends (Swales, 1990). J.R. Martin, as a prominent contributor to genre analysis in Australian Systemic Functional Linguistics, regards genre as "a staged, goal-oriented, social process" (Martin, 1992), which in-

dicates that this school stresses the integration of form, function and social context in the analysis of genre. Genre analysis in New Rhetoric Studies focuses on the situational context in which genre comes into being and on the social actions or social purposes that the genre aims to achieve.

Despite the divergence in their viewpoints, all of the three approaches share the belief that communicative purposes and contextual factors play an important role in understanding genres. Of the three approaches mentioned above, the English for Specific Purposes (ESP) approach is probably the most influential one, with Swales' move-step analysis being widely applied in the exploration of various academic and professional genres. The move analysis in this study is based on Swales' CARS model.

## 2.2 Research Methodology

### 2.2.1 Data Collection

The data used in this study consist of twenty-two corporate apologies written in Chinese and issued on Sina Weibo from 2021 to 2023. These statements were mostly made by well-known companies from various industries such as transportation, manufacturing industry and food industry. Sina Weibo is chosen as the source of corporate apology statements based on the following considerations: (1) Sina Weibo is among the most influential social media platforms in China, having 599 million monthly active users by the end of the second quarter of 2023. (2) Many companies have an official account on Sina Weibo, including BVLGARI, Tesla, and MINISO, to name just a few. (3) Sina Weibo is a platform on which companies prefer to issue a public apology when a public crisis occurs.

### 2.2.2 Data Analysis

The specific procedures used in this study are as follows:

First, as some of the statements are presented in pictures, the author needs to convert all the materials into text formats and check for any errors. The texts are then put into the same file, constituting the corpus for this analysis.

The next step is to find out the moves in these corporate apologies. Each apology is treated as an independent text, read and reflected on for multiple times. Following Swales' criterion for identifying a move, each apology is segmented into different units, which are later identified as specific move types.

## 3. Findings and analysis

Based on Swales' CARS model, the author identifies seven move types after a close examination of the samples in the corpus, which includes reviewing the incident, making apologies, accounting for the event, acknowledging responsibilities, offering repair, repairing images, and showing the resolution.

Move type 1: reviewing the incident

In public apologies, companies tend to provide a holistic account of what happened to help readers better understand the situation. The length of the move varies greatly, as the writer can either briefly introduce the previous incident with merely several words or offer an extremely detailed account of the time, place, people involved, causes, and consequences. Reviewing the incident can be realized in different ways, depending on the intention of the company. Some prefer to give a detailed account of the time, place, causes and consequences of the whole event, presenting themselves as honest and righteous corporations to the public, while others, as in example 1, avoid revealing too many details, hoping that general and vague expressions can mitigate the offensiveness of their act.

Example 1:

We have noted the reports regarding Snickers-related activities in certain regions of Asia.....

(S7 Snickers China)

Move type 2: making apologies

A sincere apology is crucial in addressing mistakes, as it helps reduce public outrage and protect a company's reputation. MINI China issued a second apology for the "ice cream incident" after the first one faced backlash. As in example 2, the company used explicit phrases like "extend our sincere apologies" to show sincerity and willingness to admit errors, conveying remorse and empathy for any negative impact caused.

Example 2:

First, we would like to extend our sincere apologies.....We deeply regret any inconvenience this may have caused.

(S2 MINI China)

Move type 3: accounting for the event

The “accounting for the event” move provides the public with a reasonable explanation of an incident, addressing their right to know the truth. Companies must explain how and why the incident occurred. Logical explanations can significantly alleviate public concerns about alleged wrongdoings. Example 3 shows how Maiquer, a modern food processing enterprise, explains its problematic products. There are cases in which companies do not think the accusations that they are involved in are true. Under such circumstances, they can refuse to acknowledge any wrongdoings and reject the allegations that they believe to be untrue.

Example 3:

Based on our preliminary investigation, the defective products resulted from our company’s failure to effectively clean the product tank lines of residual formulated milk during the transition between pure milk and formulated milk production processes, leading to the inadvertent mixing of legal food additives (including propylene glycol components) from formulated milk into pure milk.

(S12 Maiquer Group Co., Ltd.)

Move type 4: acknowledging responsibilities

Companies may criticize themselves for causing any unpleasant experiences for consumers as a way of acknowledging responsibilities. By reflecting on their incompetence and shortcomings that lead to an offensive event, corporations are confessing that they may be held responsible for the negative comments about themselves, their products or their services, as is shown in Example 4. Companies openly criticize themselves, for some problematic acts could have been prevented with greater diligence or responsibility. Besides self-criticism, companies also acknowledge responsibility by admitting mistakes. As example 5 shows, MINISO, once presenting itself as a Japanese brand, faced backlash for its marketing strategies. As Chinese product quality and cultural confidence grew, MINISO admitted its brand positioning errors to appease offended consumers and manage the crisis.

Example 4:

This also exposes significant loopholes within our company’s internal management system!

(S13 Zi Hai Guo)

Example 5:

From late 2015 to 2018, MINISO was in its early stages of global expansion and had hired Japanese designer Miyake Junya as its Chief Designer, promoting itself as a “Japanese designer brand”. During the initial stages of the company’s development, it experienced erroneous brand positioning and marketing strategies, leading it down the wrong path.

(S16 MINISO)

Move type 5: offering repair

Accused companies often outline measures in their apologies to address damage from inappropriate behavior, poor products, or services. This practice aims to minimize negative impacts by informing customers of the company’s plans to resolve the issue. Given the offense, prioritizing problem-solving and pacifying affected parties is crucial. Cha Yan Yue Se, a milk tea brand, was accused of objectifying women through its product slogans. The company responded by reflecting on the issue and promising corrective actions, including recalling the controversial items. This proactive apology helps restore its image and supports future brand development.

Example 6:

When we make a mistake, we must genuinely commit to making improvements. We will immediately recall this batch of Changsha-themed mugs. Furthermore, we will carefully reflect on the underlying reasons behind this incident, and work towards enhancements in various aspects, including creative standards, creative management, and product management.

(S3 Cha Yan Yue Se)

Move type 6: repairing images

A positive reputation is a valuable asset for companies, bringing many indirect benefits. When scandals damage corporate images, companies strive to restore them by emphasizing aspects like corporate culture, attributes, or achievements. Apologies often highlight values such as “purpose”, “tenet”, “belief” and “value” or stress the company’s national brand attributes to revive the public’s favorable memories. Example 7 shows LI-NING, a Chinese sportswear brand, defending its controversial designs by emphasizing its Chinese heritage and commitment to popular products. However, reiterating corporate culture can backfire, highlighting inconsistencies between the company’s statements and actions, potentially aggravating public sentiment.

Example 7:

The vigorous development of the Chinese economy and sports industry has been the cornerstone of LI-NING’s brand growth, and the 32-year brand journey has also relied on the support of every consumer. As a professional sports goods company in China, creating products that are loved by the public, more professional, and more design-oriented is a belief we have always adhered to.

(S6 LI-NING)

Move type 7: showing the resolution

An apology alone may not appease the public, as customers fear repeat offenses. To address this, companies often end apologies with promises. They demonstrate commitment either by pledging to improve goods or services (example 8), or by vowing to prevent future incidents (example 9). These commitments aim to dispel doubts and restore consumer confidence and trust.

Example 8:

Mars Wrigley respects China’s national sovereignty and territorial integrity, strictly abides by local laws and regulations in China, and will continue to provide high-quality products and services to Chinese consumers.

(S7 Snickers China)

Example 9:

We will definitely engage in deep reflection and take measures to prevent a similar situation from happening again.

(S11 P&G China)

## 4. Conclusions

After conducting a detailed analysis of twenty-two corporate apologies sourced from Sina Weibo, the author identifies seven distinct move types, namely, reviewing the incident, making apologies, accounting for the event, acknowledging responsibilities, offering repair, repairing images, and showing the resolution. The move type “reviewing the incident” can range from detailed descriptions of events to concise introductions. “Making apologies” signifies companies’ willingness to admit errors, while “accounting for the event” involves explaining the incident for transparency. Companies may acknowledge responsibility through self-critique or admissions of mistakes. The “offering repair” move includes proposing solutions and self-reflection. “Repairing images” involves highlighting corporate culture, attributes, and achievements. Lastly, companies may demonstrate their resolution by pledging product or service improvements and preventing similar future incidents.

The identification of move types in corporate apologies on Sina Weibo enhances understanding of this genre. It offers insights into how companies structure apologies, handle public crises, and repair reputations. Consumers can assess the sincerity and responsibility of companies, while enterprises learn how to craft effective apologies and restore their image. However, the study has limitations: the small corpus of 22 apologies may affect generalizability, and the identification of move types and strategies may be subjective. Future research should collect more samples and establish clear criteria or involve multiple annotators to reduce subjectivity.

## References

- [1]Bradford, J. L., & Garrett, D. E. (1995). The effectiveness of corporate communicative responses to accusations of unethical behavior. *Journal of Business Ethics*, 14(11), 875–892.
- [2]Dudley-Evans T., & St. John, M. (1998). *Development in ESP: A multi-disciplinary approach*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

[3]Hyon, S. (1996). Genre in three traditions: Implications for ESL. TESOL Quarterly, 30(4), 693.

[4]Li, S. (2017). Apology as a crisis response strategy: A genre-based analysis of intercultural corporate apologies. International Journal of Linguistics and Communication, 5(1).

[5]Martin, J. R. (1992). English text: System and Structure. Benjamins.

[6]Swales, J. (1990). Genre analysis: English in academic and research settings. Cambridge University Press.

### **Author's Biography:**

Name - Feng Sichen, Date of Birth - September 1996, Gender - Female, Ethnicity - Han, Place of Birth - Hangzhou, Zhejiang, Position - Graduate Student, Education - Bachelor's Degree, Institution - Hangzhou Normal University, Research Interests - Linguistics, Discourse Analysis.



# Robot Electrical Connector Detection Method Based on Yolo

Enguang Liu<sup>1</sup>, Guoliang Li<sup>2</sup>, Feng Yu<sup>1</sup>, Xiaohu Ni<sup>1</sup>, Fengming Li<sup>3</sup>

1.Shandong Transportation Institute, Jinan 250102, China

2.Unimation Intelligent Technology Co., Ltd., Jinan 250101, China

3.Shandong Jianzhu University, Jinan 250101, China)

---

**Abstract:**In this paper, the YOLOv9 algorithm is used to realize the real-time positioning detection of electrical connectors. Firstly, the camera was used to collect images of the electrical connectors that needed to be detected, and the collected pictures were classified into data sets. Meanwhile, the electrical connectors were classified and labeling was used to label the category boundary box. Then the labeled data sets were put into the YOLOv9 model for training. According to the trained electrical connector detection model, the detection and identification of electrical connector are realized.

**Keywords:** Robot; Vision Inspection; Yolo

---

## 1. Introduction

The assembly of electric connector is an important part of the manufacturing process of 3C intelligent equipment, and the assembly at this stage is mainly achieved by manual operation and auxiliary special aircraft, and there are problems of low automation, high labor intensity and high labor cost. In recent years, robots have been widely used in the industrial field, which brings opportunities for the development of automation and intelligence in assembly operations. At present, China's smart equipment production capacity, including smart phones, tablets, laptops and desktop computers, all kinds of smart wearable devices manufacturing output has accounted for 70% of the world, at the same time, increasingly improved equipment performance makes the assembly process is gradually becoming more sophisticated and high-speed. However, the assembly space of intelligent equipment assembly is small, the contact is rich, and the relationship is complex, which puts forward higher requirements for the detection and recognition strategy of robots. With the continuous development of visual recognition technology, the detection and assembly method combined with visual recognition has broken through many technical barriers in the field of intelligent assembly.

At present, object detection technology based on deep learning is relatively widely used. Deep learning enables machines to imitate human activities such as thinking and audio-visual, and solve many complex detection and recognition problems. There are many kinds of object detection algorithms based on deep learning <sup>[1]</sup>, which can be divided into two-stage detection algorithm and one-stage detection algorithm. The two-stage detection algorithm includes R-CNN series (such as R-CNN, Fast R-CNN, Faster R-CNN). These algorithms extract candidate regions of fixed size from the image and then classify each candidate region to achieve target detection. However, the one-stage detection algorithm does not need to go through the region proposal stage, and can directly generate the category probability and corresponding position coordinate value of the object. Typical algorithms are YOLO (You Only Look Once) <sup>[2]</sup> and SSD (Single Shot MultiBox Detector), which have advantages in speed. YOLO algorithm has excellent performance in object detection, especially for small targets and dense targets, its accuracy is higher, multiple targets can be detected at the same time and the detection effect is good, and it is widely used in deep learning-based visual detection.

Kim Sangwon et al. applied the YOLO algorithm to the field of fire detection and proposed a non-domain detection method, which could be applied to fire detection in different scenarios <sup>[3]</sup>. Shou Li et al. applied YOLO to the detection of automotive wiring harness assembly, enabling flexible and intelligent target detection in automotive assembly <sup>[4]</sup>. Long Wu et al. proposed a method for detecting targets in hazy weather by using YOLO, which provided important theoretical support for the all-weather application of LiDAR <sup>[5]</sup>. Shi Weiya et al. applied YOLO to remote sensing small target detection, improving the detection accuracy of small targets in remote sensing <sup>[6]</sup>. Surjeet Djalal et al applied YOLO to fire detection in smart cities, which significantly improved the accuracy and speed of fire detection <sup>[7]</sup>.Huang Qi <sup>[9]</sup> from Southwest University of Science and Technology made use of the advantages of YOLO, such as easy training and real-time detection,

and improved its accuracy in small target detection through in-depth research and improvement. Wei Ruige<sup>[10]</sup> from University of Electronic Science and Technology of China proposed a UAV small target detection algorithm with excellent detection accuracy by combining YOLO algorithm and Mask RCNN algorithm.

This topic uses the YOLO target detection algorithm combined with the robot arm to guide the robot arm to accurately and quickly locate and identify various electrical connectors of different specifications through corresponding training, learning and operation, which has important theoretical significance and practical value for improving the level of visual inspection in China's intelligent manufacturing assembly industry.

## 2. Robot electrical connector positioning and detection process

According to the requirements of the detection task, the detection and positioning process of the robot electrical connector is designed, as shown in Fig 1 .

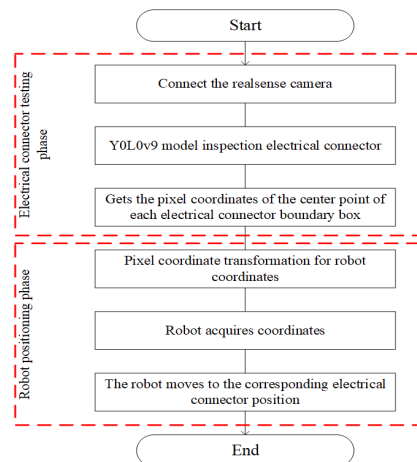


Fig.1 Flow chart of robot electrical connector detection and positioning

The positioning strategy of electrical connector based on visual recognition proposed in this paper mainly includes two processes: the detection stage of electrical connector and the positioning stage of robot. YOLOv9 is used to detect the category and position of electrical connector, pass the coordinates to the robot arm, and guide it to the correct position. The specific steps are as follows:

Step 1: Start the YOLOv9 detection environment and UR5e robotic arm, connect the realsense camera, and prepare a complete experiment environment;

Step 2: Use the detection model trained in Chapter 3 to conduct classification detection of electrical connectors, and preliminarily obtain pixel coordinates of each electrical connector boundary box;

Step 3: The pixel coordinates are converted to the robot arm coordinates through the transformation matrix calculated by nine-point calibration;

Step 4: The UR5e robot arm is controlled remotely through TCP/IP protocol to obtain the corresponding electrical connector coordinates in turn;

Step 5: The UR5e robot arm moves to the upper part of each electrical connector detection space according to the obtained electrical connector coordinates to complete the electrical connector detection and positioning.

## 3. YOLO target detection principle and structure composition

The core idea of YOLO principle is relatively straightforward. As shown in Figure 3.1, if it is necessary to predict which objects are contained in the image, the input image is first evenly divided into  $S \times S$  squares, each of which is responsible for predicting the object category, and each grid generates two anchor boxes with height and width  $(h_1, w_1)$ ,  $(h_2, w_2)$ , respectively, according to the empirical value. The matching degree between the predicted anchor frame and the real value is compared and judged, that is, the Intersection over Union (IoU) is calculated, and the offset  $X, Y, H, W$  of the anchor frame and their confidence are calculated at the same time. The anchor frame with low

confidence is filtered and the anchor frame with the confidence is kept, and the accurate detection effect is finally presented.

The components of YOLO include: network architecture, basic network, feature extraction layer, mesh partitioning, boundary box prediction, non-maximum suppression, loss function, etc. Programmable Gradient Information (PGI) [10] is a kind of programmable gradient information to deal with the loss of original information in the process of deep network learning. In the process of model training and learning, after layer learning, feature extraction and spatial transformation, when the front propagates to a certain layer, the corresponding loss needs to be calculated, and the gradient information needs to be updated through backpropagation to ensure the effect of model training. However, the farther the layer is from the loss, the worse the update effect will be obtained.

As shown in Figure 2, (a) is the most original training structure of YOLO. When undergoing training and learning, loss calculation and updating gradient information, the update effect will be weakened during the propagation and updating process. In order to ensure the loss and updating effect, an auxiliary branch is introduced on the basis of the original structure, as shown in Figure (d), an additional branch (gray) is introduced into the original input data. At the same time, the branch is directly connected to the output layer (white) to improve the effect of updating gradient information with computational loss, and make up for the information lost in the shallow layer due to continuous feature extraction during the training process. It is worth noting that the branch introduced to improve the compensation effect of lost information only exists in the training and learning process, and does not exist in the actual test and application environment. With this method, YOLOv9's target detection performance on the MS COCO dataset greatly outperforms existing real-time target detectors in all aspects.

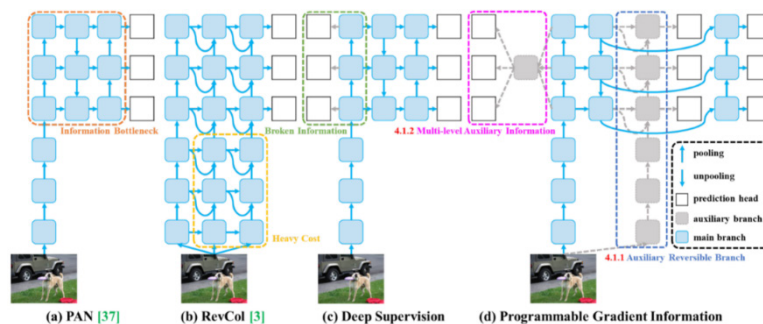


Fig.2 YOLOv9 Improvement Scheme

#### 4. Electrical connector data set construction

The construction of the data set first requires image acquisition and labeling of the detected objects. The Realsense camera is used for image acquisition of the electrical connector panel of the detection, and no less than 100 images are collected, and the influence information such as lighting and Angle is comprehensively considered. The collected images are processed in different degrees to obtain better training results. Then, the captured images were annotated. First, the labeling annotation software was installed by running the pip install labeling command in the built python virtual environment, and the annotated format was changed to YOLO. Then the electrical connectors were classified into five categories. They are Type-C, Micro USB, Type-A, Type-B and RJ-45 respectively, and each image is labeled with category labels. After the annotation is completed, the corresponding annotated image file and text file will be generated, and the image file corresponds to the text file one by one.

The number of datasets is divided according to the size of the dataset and the number of available samples, and the randomness of the data should be ensured to avoid problems such as skewed duplication of the data. In general, the training set accounts for 60% to 80% of the total data, which is used for model training and parameter tuning. The validation set accounted for 10%-20% of the total data, which was used for hyperparameter adjustment and model selection. The test set, which accounts for 10% to 20% of the total population, is used for the performance evaluation of the final model.

According to the above data set division method, 104 electrical connector panels to be detected are collected in this paper. The training set contains 86 images, and the validation set and the test set use 18 images together.

## 5. Detection model training and detection localization results

The model algorithm is verified on the robot electrical connector detection and positioning platform based on YOLOv9 and UR5e industrial manipulator.

### 5.1 Model training

After setting up YOLOv5 and YOLOv9 environments and processing the data set appropriately, the data set can be used for model training. First, replace the train, val, and test paths in the COCO.yaml file with the corresponding dataset paths, where train is the training set, val is the validation set, and test is the test set. And change the data in names to the split label category in the same order as when the label was made. The parameters are selected as shown in Table 1.

Table 1 Parameter selection

Parameter Name	Parameter Meaning	Parameter selection
weights	Model weights file	yolov9-c-converted.pt
cfg	Model configuration file	yolov9-c.yaml
hyp	Hyperparameter file press	hyp.scratch-high.yaml
epochs	Total number of training rounds	100
batch-size	Batch size	2
img-size	Input image resolution size	640
rect	Whether to use rectangle training	False
resum	Continue training from the break-point	
nosave	Not saving the model	False
notest	No test	False
noautoanchor	No automatic anchor adjustment	False
evolve	Whether to perform hyperparameter evolution	False
cache-images	Whether to cache images in memory ahead of time	False
name	Dataset Name	
device	Training equipment	0
multi-scale	Whether to perform multi-scale training	False
single-cls	Whether the dataset has only one class	False

The corresponding evaluation index data of each interface detection model are shown in Table 2:

Table 2 Model evaluation indicators

Interface category	Precision	Recall	Accuracy	F1
Type-C	0.57	0.89	0.86	0.69
Micro-USB	0.93	1	0.98	0.96
Type-B	1	1	1	1
Type-A	0.66	0.86	0.89	0.75
RJ-45	1	1	1	1

### 5.2 Testing result

The trained model can accurately detect each electrical connector and indicate the center point coordinates of the bounding box. The red bounding box indicates that the electrical connector is identified as the Type-C interface, the confidence levels are 0.88 and 0.75, respectively, and the center point coordinates are (819.5, 2145.0) and (1192.5, 2148.0), respectively. The pink bounding box indicates that the electrical connector is recognized as a Micro-USB interface, the confidence values are 0.48 and 0.78, respectively, and the center point coordinates are (1758.0, 2172.0) and (2142.5, 2169.5), respectively. The orange bounding box indicates that the electrical connector is recognized

as a Type-A interface with confidence values of 0.51 and 0.57, respectively, and the center point coordinates are (2810.0, 2180.5) and (3250.0, 2188.0), respectively. The yellow bounding box indicates that the electrical connector is recognized as Type-B interface, the confidence degrees are 0.87 and 0.85, respectively, and the center point coordinates are (3835.0, 2228.0) and (4278.0, 2233.0), respectively. The green bounding box indicates that the electrical connector is identified as the RJ-45 interface with the confidence of 0.91 and 0.88, respectively, and the center point coordinates are (4784.5, 2287.0) and (5232.5, 2301.0), respectively. According to the actual detection results, the model can be applied to the subsequent actual detection links.

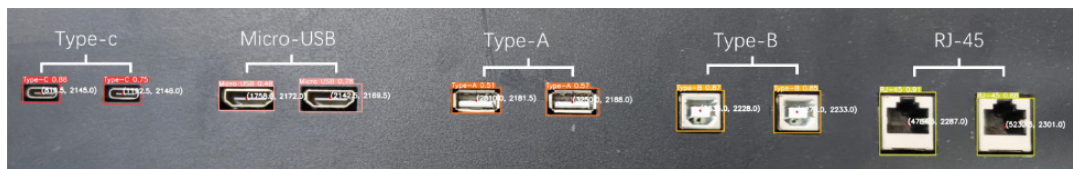


Fig. 3 Test results of electrical connector detection effect

The model detection weights trained in the YOLOv9 target detection algorithm are used to detect the electrical connector detection panel. At the same time, the pixel coordinates of the detection bounding box center point of each electrical connector in the obtained detection results are output as a text file, and the coordinates are converted in the remote communication control program of the manipulator, and the final manipulator coordinates are passed into the UR5e manipulator. Through experiments, the sum of the detection accuracy data of various categories of electrical connectors is divided by the number of electrical connector categories, and the detection success rate of the detection model reaches 88.32%. At the same time, the model can accurately input the coordinates and guide the robot to move above the corresponding electrical connector, indicating that the electrical connector positioning strategy based on visual recognition proposed in this paper can realize the corresponding detection task. It verifies that the method has high feasibility.

## 6. Conclusions

Aiming at the recognition task of electrical connectors for robots in the process of intelligent equipment assembly, this paper proposes a detection and positioning strategy of electrical connectors based on visual recognition, so that robots can accurately identify different types of electrical connectors and accurately move to the corresponding positions. The electrical connector recognition model based on YOLOv9 is studied to improve the accuracy of electrical connector detection. A detection and recognition experiment is designed on the UR5e robot platform to verify the feasibility of the strategy, which provides theoretical basis and corresponding technical support for the application of robots in detection and recognition tasks in the assembly process of intelligent equipment.

## References

- [1]Lu Yuchao. Research on Object detection Algorithm Based on deep learning [D]. Jiangsu: Jiangnan University, 2023.
- [2]Xu Yanwei, Li Jun, Dong Yuanfang, Zhang Xiaoli. A Survey of YOLO Series Object Detection Algorithms [J]. Computer Science and Exploration, 2024.
- [3]Kim Sangwon;Jang In su;Ko Byoung Chul.Domain-free fire detection using the spatial-temporal attention transform of the YOLO backbone[J].Springer Nature.
- [4]Shuo Li;Mingzhe Yuan;Wenhong Wang;Feidao Cao;Hongyan Shi;Yuhang Zhang;Xiangpu Meng.Enhanced YOLO- and Wearable-Based Inspection System for Automotive Wire Harness Assembly[J].MDPI.
- [5]Long Wu;Fuxiang Gong;Xu Yang;Lu Xu;Shuyu Chen;Yong Zhang;Jianlong Zhang;Chenghua Yang;Wei Zhang.The YOLO-based Multi-Pulse Lidar (YMPL) for target detection in hazy weather[J]. Elsevier.
- [6]Shi Weiya;Zhang Shaowen;Zhang Shiqiang.CAW-YOLO: Cross-Layer Fusion and Weighted Receptive Field-Based YOLO for Small Object Detection in Remote Sensing[J]. Tech Science Press.
- [7]Surjeet Dalal;Umesh Kumar Lilhore;Magdalena Radulescu;Sarita Simaiya;Vivek Jaglan;Ashish Sharma. A hybrid LBP-CNN with YOLO-v5-based fire and smoke detection model in various environmental conditions for environmental sustainability in smart city[J].Pu-

bMed.

[8]ZHANG Qi. Research on small object detection Algorithm Based on YOLO Network [D]. Sichuan: Southwest University of Science and Technology, 2023.

[9]Wei Ruige. Research on UAV Small Target Detection Algorithm Based on Deep Learning [D].Sichuan: University of Electronic Science and Technology of China, 2022

[10]Chien-Yao Wang,I-Hau Yeh.YOLOv9:Learning What You Want to Learn Using Programmable Gradient Information[J].Institute of Information Science,Academia,Sinica,Taiwan,National Taipei University of Technology,Taiwan,Department of Information and Computer Engineering, Chung Yuan Christian University, Taiwan.

### **About the author:**

Enguang Liu (1983.12), male, Han, Shandong Zibo, Junior Engineer, Degree, Shandong Transportation Institute, Research on Vision Inspection Technology and Robotics



# Life cycle assessment and plastic chemical plastic reduction and carbon reduction

Sicheng Lv

Shanghai Litchi International Academy, Shanghai200333, China

**Abstract:** This paper examines the use of Life Cycle Assessment (LCA) in evaluating the environmental impacts of plastic production and consumption, particularly in reducing carbon and plastic waste. As global plastic use increases, especially in China, LCA provides a critical tool for assessing the full environmental footprint, from production to disposal. The study highlights LCA's value in identifying areas for improvement but also notes its limitations, emphasizing the need for more accurate tools to support sustainable development efforts.

**Keywords:** Life Cycle Assessment (LCA); Plastic production; Carbon reduction; Environmental impact; Plastic waste

## 1. Global plastic consumption and production

As the global population continues to grow and per capita income grows, global consumption of plastic products has grown dramatically over the past 50 years, with the highest growth rate, outpacing steel, aluminum products and cement (OECD, 2022). Most of the plastics used today are native plastic made from crude oil or natural gas. Due to the high energy consumption in fossil fuel feedstocks and refining processes, most of the plastic greenhouse gas emissions can be attributed to the production stage. Bio-based plastics are a smaller class of plastics with properties similar to those of fossil-based plastics but derived from biomass. Fossil-based plastics and bio-based plastics are collectively known as primary plastics. Plastics made of recycled materials are called recycled plastics. Recycled plastics have less greenhouse gas emissions than native plastics, but they accounted for only 6 percent of global plastic use in 2019.

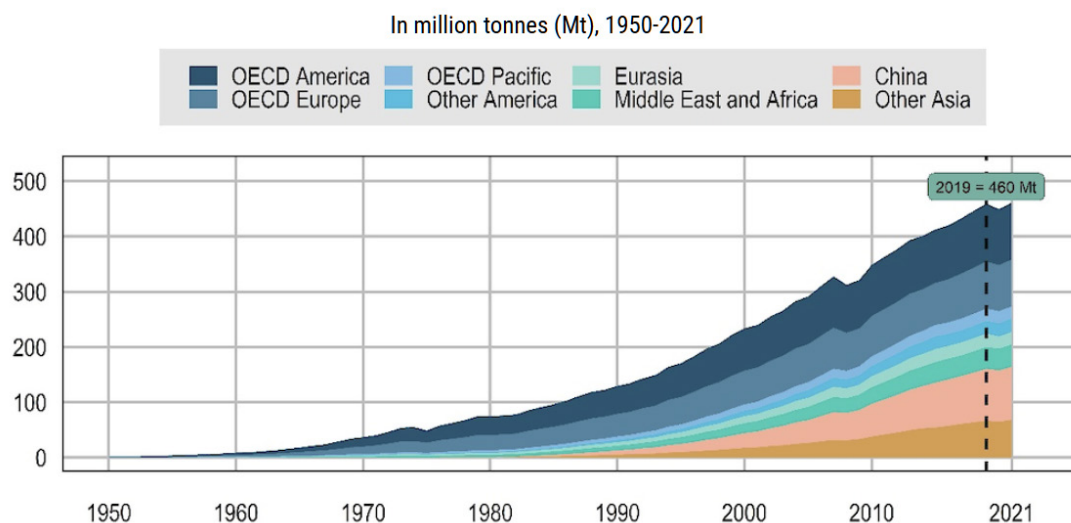


Figure 1: Global plastic consumption over the past 70 years (data source: OECD)

From 1950 to 2020, the global cumulative plastic production has exceeded 10.5 billion tons. Although plastic production has been growing at a cagr of 5% since 1975, the overall trend is declining. Each decline prompted producers to try to increase production, but production failed to return to its previous peak levels due to scale effects and environmental constraints. According to the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP), if current trends continue, global plastic production will consume 20% of the global oil supply by 2050, 25 percent of which are single-use plastic products. Carbon emissions from plastic production and use will account for 15% of the total global carbon budget under the 2°C scenario (Energy Research Institute, Peking University, 2023).

## 2. Consumption and production of plastics in China

China is an important country in plastic consumption, and the OECD reported: “ China accounts for about 20 percent of global plastic demand, the United States about 18 percent and European countries about 18 percent.”(OECD, 2022) China’s plastic consumer demand reflects the country’s strong economic dynamics. The report accounts for 37 percent of total plastic consumption, 88.5 percent of which will be treated as plastic waste in China. It is estimated that China’s plastic waste is about 84 million tons in 2020, of which about 53 million tons are burned, and the rest is buried or scattered in the natural environment. Following this trend, the full life-cycle carbon emissions of disposable plastics will reach 375 million tons by 2040 (Pacific Environment, 2023). The carbon emission of recyclable plastics is lower than that of disposable plastics, and also lower than that of alternative glass products, so it is a more reasonable alternative to carbon reduction and plastic reduction.

China’s plastics industry is growing very rapidly, with close to 32% of the global total output. Five major general-purpose plastics, including polyethylene (PE), polypropylene (PP), polyvinyl chloride (PVC), polystyrene (PS) and ABS resins, account for 75% of China’s total plastic production and consumption in China (Energy Research Institute, Peking University, 2023). Biodegradable plastics, because of their ability to be decomposed and degraded by microorganisms in the natural environment, will not cause long-term environmental pollution, and are more and more popular in the market. China’s biodegradable plastics market scale reached 16.049 billion yuan. At present, the treatment of non-biodegradable plastics mainly includes recycling and chemical cracking means. According to the American Materials Testing Association classification, recycling is mainly divided into four levels, including mechanical processing, intermediate product recovery and energy recovery (Zhang et al., 2021).

## 3. Life Cycle Assessment

Almost all of the plastic products come from fossil fuels, meaning that the incineration and degradation of the plastic products will inevitably lead to significant carbon emissions. Therefore, plastic products-based life cycle assessment is crucial to fully understanding the environmental impact of plastic products. According to the ISO14040 standard, the Life Cycle Assessment (LCA, Life Cycle Assessment) is a systematic method for assessing the impact of a product, process, or service on the environment throughout its life cycle. This process begins with the acquisition of raw materials, including the transportation of raw materials, the production, sale, and use of products, until the abandonment and disposal (Vlasopoulos et al., 2023). The purpose of LCA is to identify and quantify environmental loads in these stages and thus provide a scientific basis for reducing negative impacts.

1. Define objectives and scope: Determine the objectives and scope of the study, including system boundaries and functional units. System boundaries define which processes and activities will be included in the LCA.
2. Life Cycle Inventory Analysis (LCI): Collect and quantify all material and energy flows involved throughout the life cycle. This includes raw material consumption, energy use, waste generation and so on.
3. Life Cycle Impact Assessment (LCIA): To analyze and evaluate the potential environmental impact of LCI data. Common environmental impact categories include global warming potential, ozone layer depletion, acidification, eutrophication, resource depletion, etc.
4. Explanation: Analyze the LCA results and draw conclusions to suggest improvement. Identifying major sources of environmental impact and prioritizing improvement.

## 4. The Lifecycle Assessment application

Through the life cycle assessment, the environmental impact coefficient of plastic products can be studied in depth, and the environmental impact of different stages and different categories of plastic production, consumption and disposal can be analyzed from various perspectives such as energy consumption and carbon emission. The study shows that the five major plastics have a different impact on the environment according to the type. In the same category, the environmental impact under different uses is also different. The degree of resource and environmental impact of plastic products is from high to low: other plastic products, daily plastic products, beverage bottles, food boxes, takeaway boxes, daily chemical packaging, other packaging, and film plastic bags (Cao et al., 2020)

The life cycle assessment can also subdivide the sources of plastic pollution and provide data support for the prevention and control of plastic pollution, especially microplastic pollution. Research show that the main source of resin particles in China's environment is the leakage of resin particles carried by the wastewater in the production of plastic products and the leakage of resin raw materials in the transportation process. Meanwhile, plastic agricultural film is also one of the sources of environmental microplastics that have received high attention recently (Shen Chenhao et al., 2021).

Life cycle assessment can help enterprises to analyze the production, sales and product consumption process from different dimensions, so as to compare the adjustment effect of different processes and management processes on the impact of the enterprise environment, optimize the enterprise product structure and production process, and effectively reduce the negative impact of enterprises on the environment.

For example, BASF uses life cycle assessment to evaluate how the "chemical cycle" project can reduce carbon dioxide emissions from multiple dimensions, including three steps of calculating input, process, output, comparative thermal cracking + chemical processing, incineration and mechanical recovery (BASF, no date).

## 5.sum up

Life cycle assessment is very important for sustainable development, because its analysis includes the entire life cycle of the product, which prevents the transfer of environmental burden to non-key monitoring links in order to improve a specific link in the process of carbon reduction and plastic reduction, thus missing the purpose of carbon reduction and plastic reduction. Life-cycle assessment can assess the environmental impact of a product from multiple perspectives, such as strategies to assess ecological performance, the actual use of raw materials, and pollutant emissions (Kousemaker, Jonker and Vakis, 2021). Life-cycle assessment also has some limitations and drawbacks. For example, the material and energy flows for each step of the life cycle inventory usually come from various databases, and the data sources of the database can only cover some country-specific processes, and may not apply to all environmental variables (Schwarz et al., 2021). Therefore, the development of more appropriate life cycle assessment tools in the deceleration of carbon reduction in corporate and social research is also an important step.

## References

- [1] BASF (no date) Life Cycle Assessment (LCA) for ChemCycling @<https://www.basf.com/us/en/who-we-are/sustainability/we-drive-sustainable-solutions/circular-economy/mass-balance-approach/chemcycling/lca-for-chemcycling.html> .
- [2] Deiso (2024) 'Lifecycle Assessment: Introduction Guide-DEISO,' DEISO Company, 1 March.<https://dei.so/cn/life-cycle-assessment-a-getting-started-guide/>.
- [3] Kousemaker , T.M., Jonker, G.H.and Vakis, A.I.(2021) 'LCA Practices of Plastics and their Recycling: A Critical review,' Applied Sciences , 11(8), p.3305. <https://doi.org/10.3390/app11083305>.
- [4] OECD (2022) Global Plastics Outlook <https://doi.org/10.1787/de747aef-en> .
- [5] Pacific Environment (2023) Make reuse a key solution to the plastic crisis, Pacific Environment <https://www.pacificenvironment.org/wp-content/uploads/2023/11/Making-Reuse-the-Key-Solution-to-the-Plastic-Crisis.pdf> .
- [6] Schwarz, A.E.et al.(2021) 'Plastic recycling in a circular economy; determining environmental performance through an LCA matrix model approach,' Waste Management , 121, pp.331–342. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wasman.2020.12.020>.
- [7] Vlasopoulos , A.et al.(2023) 'Life cycle assessment of plastic waste and energy recovery,' Energy , 277, p.127576. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.energy.2023.127576>.
- [8] Zhang, F.et al.(2021) 'Current technologies for plastic waste treatment: A review,' Journal of Cleaner Production , 282, p.124523. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclepro.2020.124523>.
- [9] Energy Research Institute of Peking University (2023) 2022 Research Report on Green and Low-carbon Development of China's Plastic Industry.

# Bidding decision optimization based on integer programming method - a case study of virtual company of Ewood Technology Company

Han Zhou

Shanghai University of International business and economics, Shanghai 201600, China

---

**Abstract:** The report delves into the challenges faced by a Communication Base Station Equipment company. In January, the company encountered a financial crisis due to a lack of strategic consideration in bid management, particularly in terms of the number and geographical spread of tenders, leading to a negative profit margin. To address this, the report adopts integer programming as a tool to optimize profits for both January and February. This approach includes modeling various variables such as monthly factory upgrades, delivery schedules, and procurement volumes. The parameters set for the model encompass decisions on bids, selections of factory delivery options, and quantities of materials to be procured. The primary objective is to maximize the total profit by the end of February.

There are specific recommendations, such as choosing four bids in January and seven in February, strategically distributed across two manufacturing facilities. Additionally, the report underscores the importance of managing total production time for all tenders to prevent negative impacts on subsequent tender processes and potential breaches of contracts.

**Keywords:** Supply Chain; Integer Programming; Purchasing

---

## 1. Introduction of virtual company

The communication base station equipment manufacturing enterprise is a virtual enterprise invented by Yi Wu Co., LTD. Which operate two factories located in Jinan and Hefei. Its business model involves bidding for contracts with potential customers. Successful bids lead to weekly procurement of raw materials, tailored to order quantities. The factories then engage in production, followed by shipping the finished products to customers. The process culminates with customer payments, closing the supply chain loop. This setup underscores the importance of efficient bid management and production coordination to maintain profitability and customer satisfaction.

## 2. Problem identification

The company is currently facing several financial and operational challenges, in analyzing the current situation, it's evident that January experienced a surplus of 3,954 units, whereas February faced a deficit of 684 units, highlighting an imbalance between production and demand over these months. January's profit was negative, adding to the pressure on spending in February, while there was a significant increase in revenue from January to February, likely attributed to heightened demand and possibly larger tender quantities. However, this is in line with an increase in all cost categories for February, expected due to higher production volumes, but raising concerns about whether this cost rise is proportional to the revenue increase. The procurement cost, which more than doubled from January to February, suggests a possible hike in material costs. In the case of raw materials, companies have signed contracts that are too expensive and have high prepayments at a 70% rate, resulting in insufficient funds to carry out other activities. The shortage of funds affected the final payment of February, and it was impossible to continue ordering raw materials and production, which threatened the long-term operation of the company.

Because the volumes and order location are not fully considered in the bidding, resulting in high logistics costs. This also results in the double blow of default and liquidated damages, and affects customer cooperation. Furthermore, the notable rise in transportation costs in February could be due to an increased number of products shipped or higher shipping rates. The increases in fixed operation and production costs align with the expansion activities at the Jinan factory. In the profit aspect, the company shifted from a loss in January to a substantial profit in February, resulting in an overall positive two-month total profit, but as February made up much of the losses incurred in January, it ended up overpaying.

### 3. Assumption

The Integer programming method and decision theory are selected to address the problem.

The company's factories are located in Jinan and Hefei, with specific start dates on 1.08 and 1.14 for their operation. So, Jinan produces 23 days in January, and Hefei produces 18 days. Hefei and Jinan factories are small factories in January that have a capacity of 300 units per day, providing a clear measure for planning production schedules and bidding strategies. An 85% quality rate is assumed for the production of January, which impacts the total effective output and planning for procurement to meet quality product demand. Daily operating costs and per-unit production costs are fixed at 36 thousand per day and ¥ 360 per unit respectively in both Jinan and Hefei factories. The company has exclusive deals with all three component suppliers, the Anhui chip factory, the Shandong crate factory, and the Hebei battery plant. The consumption of chips, crates, and battery supply in the product is 2:1:1 respectively. Since there is no regulation on the quantities for different components (chips, cases, and power supplies), they will vary to align with production needs and quality rates, reflecting more realistic scenarios and potentially reducing costs.

Suppliers will not fail to deliver specific prepayment percentages for different components and the advance payment for the purchase of chips, chassis, and power supplies is 70%, 50%, and 50% respectively at the time of purchase. Assuming a 100% success rate in bidding simplifies the financial and operational planning, so there is no need to consider the problem of margin, all scalars are up and settled before the end of January, and the winning unit price is ¥ 1,950. After winning the bid, to ensure a high enough credit score, it is not possible to default on late delivery or termination of the contract, but represents an ideal scenario.

In February, the Jinan factory was improved to a middle one, which has a larger capacity of 600 units per day, with an 87% quality rate the fixed start cost is 60,000 CNY / day, and the production cost of the product is reduced to 300 CNY / piece. The winning unit price increases to ¥ 2000.

In the delivery process, the company chooses "overtime express", the unit price is 177.23 CNY/piece, Minimal Transport Quantity is 240 pieces, two factories cannot distribute the same order. All orders are delivered centrally after production at the end of the month. We assume that according to the distance of the order, to arrange the transportation of Jinan or Hefei, and the closer factories give priority to delivery. There is no inventory in the factory at the end of the month.

### 4. Overview of General Model

Decision Variables

$X_i=1$  if the target bid is selected (binary)

$X_{ij}=1$  if a target is delivered from factory  $j$  (binary)

$P_c$ =number of components  $c$ (chip,crate,battery) purchased in month  $t$

$V_{jt}$ =factory  $j$ 's production volume in month  $t$

Objective Function

$$= \max \left( \sum (TargetPrice_t \times Demand_i \times X_i) - \sum (PurchasedPrice_c \times P_{ct}) \right. \\ \left. - \sum (X_{ij} \times \frac{Demand_i}{MinUnit_i} \times 42000) - \sum (OperationDay \times OperationCost_j) \right. \\ \left. - \sum (CostPerUnit_j \times V_{jt}) \right)$$

Constraints

$$\sum X_{ij} = \sum X_i \quad \forall i = 1, \dots, 28; \forall j = 1, 2;$$

$$\sum V_{jt} \geq \sum (Demand_i \times X_{ij}) \quad \forall i = 1, \dots, 28; \forall j = 1, 2; \forall t = 1, 2$$

Product=2Chip+Crate+Battery

$$\sum_{i=1}^n V_{jt} \leq ProductionCapacity_{jt} \quad \forall i = 1, \dots, 28; \forall j = 1, 2; \forall t = 1, 2$$

## 5. Results and Discussion

After implementation of the model, the results show that among the 28 target bids, 11 bids were selected, (4 in January and 7 in February). Apart from that, a total production level of 12274 in January and 25143 in February is available. The map below shows the delivery route for each factory.

After the model was implemented, January experienced a substantial increase in demand, which suggests that the model's approach to market analysis or customer engagement is highly effective. However, the slight decrease in February's demand could indicate market saturation or shifting customer needs that the model did not fully anticipate.

The model remarkably reduced surplus inventory in January, moving towards a just-in-time production model, which helps in reducing holding costs. No deficit occurred in the new model, indicating that the default rate of orders is 0%, which will improve customer satisfaction and relationship management.

The increase in January revenue is aligned with the increased demand, which is a positive indicator of the model's effectiveness. However, the slight decrease in February, despite being minor, is the best scenario given the current production level of factories.

The procurement cost savings are a significant achievement, resulting from better supplier negotiations therefore more advantageous payment terms are achieved, and reduced repayment pressure helps January to switch from loss-making to profit.

Transportation cost reductions are impressive and may reflect optimized delivery routes, and improved logistics planning, as the model will automatically calculate the shortest path for each factory and ensure that every customer is delivered by its nearest factory, therefore, transportation costs are reduced drastically.

The model focuses on selecting targets and the amount of materials to be purchased in a short time (two months) rather than changing the fixed cost. The unchanged fixed operation costs were expected; however, there might be opportunities for long-term savings through investments in automation or energy efficiency.

Production costs remained the same, which could mean that the model has assumed that the production level is constant as each factory is at its maximal production level once they are set.

The dramatic increase in January's profits is a direct result of increased demand and significant cost reductions, showcasing the model's overall effectiveness. The profit increase in February, while smaller, still indicates positive performance, especially given the minor decrease in revenue. The model seems to manage costs effectively to maintain profitability.

## 6. Recommendations

### 6.1 Bid Selection—Location

When considering transportation costs, it's crucial to note that the cost per dispatch is ¥42,000, with the bid price range of ¥1,950 to ¥2,000. Given this cost structure, to avoid a loss, each dispatch must contain more than 22 products. However, merely considering transportation costs is insufficient; production and procurement costs must also be accounted for (Si, J. et al., 2023). Integrating these factors, it is deduced that the quantity of goods per shipment should be no less than 50 items. Therefore, the company should opt for bids where the minimum quantity per shipment is at least 60 items. Taking the January bid for Ruili as an example, for factories in Jinan and Hefei, this bid should be avoided as the transportation cost per shipment cannot be covered by the revenue.

### 6.2 Bid Selection—Volume

Next, the bid volume is also significant. The production costs for small and medium-sized factories are ¥50 and ¥300 respectively, with startup costs of ¥36,000 and ¥60,000. Considering the transportation costs, we reiterate that the quantity per shipment should exceed 50 items to ensure factories operate at maximum capacity daily. Therefore, caution is advised when selecting bid volumes during the bidding process. This case assumes that each bid can only be supplied by one factory, so the production time of a factory for one bid should not exceed one week. Specifically, the bid volume for a small factory is about 2,500 items, and for a medium factory, about 4,000 items. Exceeding these limits could lead to excessive transportation costs and might also affect subsequent bidding plans.

## References

[1]Si, J., He, F., Lin, X., & Tang, X. (2023). Vehicle Dispatching and Routing of On-Demand Intercity Ride-Pooling Services: A Multi-Agent Hierarchical Reinforcement Learning Approach. ArXiv. /abs/2307.06742



# A Brief Discussion on the Training Value and Cultural Artistic Inheritance of Tibetan “Reba” Dance

Bo Hui

Southwest Minzu University, Chengdu610225, China

---

**Abstract:** The Tibetan “Reba” dance is a multifaceted performing art that integrates dance, music, and acrobatics, deeply rooted in religious and cultural contexts. This paper examines the origins, historical evolution, and cultural significance of the Reba dance in Tibetan society. It highlights the dance’s role in enhancing dancers’ physical flexibility and overall abilities. By detailing specific movements and artistic expressions, the study showcases the practical and artistic value of the Reba dance in training. Additionally, it emphasizes the importance of preserving the Reba dance as intangible cultural heritage, advocating for its protection and integration with modern art to ensure its continued legacy.

**Keywords:** Tibetan “Reba” Dance; Artistic Value; Dancer Training; Traditional Performing Arts

---

## 1. Introduction

The Tibetan “Reba” dance is one of China’s outstanding traditional minority cultures, prevalent in Tibetan regions of Tibet, Yunnan, Sichuan, Gansu, and Qinghai. It is a comprehensive performing art that combines storytelling, singing, dancing, acrobatics, qigong, and short dramas. In Tibetan, “Reba” has two meanings: it refers to the comprehensive art form itself and to wandering performers with long braided hair, symbolizing itinerant dancers<sup>[1]</sup>.

According to folklore, “Reba” dance originated from religious beliefs and was a shamanistic dance performed to suppress demons. Its rise is linked to the construction of the Samye Monastery, where the successful completion of each floor coincided with the performance of the “nine drum points”<sup>[2]</sup>. Hence, the modern “Reba” drum dance typically features one, three, six, and nine drum points. As an important component of Tibetan dance, “Reba” dance also represents a significant artistic form. The “Reba” drum, a round, flat drum with a handle, is a crucial prop in the performances of this artistic form. The primary function of the “Reba” drum is to emphasize the rhythm and enhance the performance atmosphere.

## 2. The Training Value of Tibetan “Reba” Dance

### 2.1 Enhancing dancers’ physical flexibility

The “Reba” drum dance, a significant representation of Tibetan dance style and spiritual essence, also carries the religious connotation of exorcism. Different “Reba” drum troupes have their unique acrobatic movements and techniques<sup>[3]</sup>, which are technically demanding and require high levels of physical flexibility and strength from dancers. Thus, the dance holds substantial training value.

In performances, the “Reba” drum plays a crucial role, unifying the dance’s style and spirit while retaining its exorcism roots. Various regional troupes incorporate unique acrobatic movements and techniques that demand exceptional flexibility and physical strength. For example, the “drum spin” technique involves the dancer holding the drum with a relaxed yet firm grip, using wrist flexibility and strength to spin the drum. This technique, often used in transitions or finales, showcases the dancer’s agility and artistic impact. Another complex technique is the “drum flip,” which requires advanced control and coordination. Movements like “drum spin and flip” necessitate precise body control to avoid instability and awkwardness. The drum flip also involves intricate footwork, demanding stable mental rhythm and precise hand-foot coordination.

Examining the “Reba” drum dance’s technical features reveals its complex coordination training value<sup>[1]</sup>. Dancers must balance rapid drumming and step changes, enhancing their flexibility and overall physical fitness. Through continuous practice, dancers develop refined muscle control and strength distribution, achieving precise and aesthetically pleasing movements<sup>[4]</sup>. Especially in high-difficulty performanc-

es, such as combining “drum spin” and “drum flip,” dancers need excellent physical condition and extensive stage experience, making “Reba” dance an ideal training method for comprehensive skill development.

## **2.2 Enhancing Dancers’ Comprehensive Abilities**

“Reba” dance includes characteristic movements such as “bowing,” “relaxed hips,” and “leaning forward,” with all actions performed in a “knee-trembling” rhythm. The dance involves nine specific hand positions for holding the drum, various leg movements like standing, semi-squatting, and kneeling, and trunk movements such as bending and twisting, along with upper limb movements like raising, spreading, lowering, and folding the arms. During performance and practice, dancers must constantly switch dance postures, coordinating hand and foot movements, which enhances their physical coordination and muscle utilization while deepening their understanding of Tibetan dance style.

The “Reba” drum extends beyond a prop for visual effect and technical mastery, serving as an extension of the dancer’s inner emotions and consciousness. Training with the “Reba” drum allows dancers to master various prop techniques, enhancing their emotional expression and stage presence, fostering interaction and emotional resonance with the audience.

Moreover, the diverse training methods and techniques of Tibetan “Reba” dance significantly enhance dancers’ overall abilities. From mastering basic movements to refining complex techniques, each step requires significant effort and time. During “Reba” dance performances, dancers must continually adjust and optimize their movements for the best performance effect. Through extensive training and practice, dancers improve their physical fitness and technical skills, enabling more expressive and articulate performances.

## **3. The Cultural and Artistic Heritage Value of Tibetan “Reba” Dance**

The Tibetan “Reba” dance is a traditional form of dance within Tibetan culture, holding profound historical and cultural value. As an intangible cultural heritage, it carries the historical memory of the Tibetan people and reflects the wisdom and lifestyle of their ancestors.

### **3.1 The artistic value of “Reba” dance**

The movements and techniques of the “Reba” dance are diverse and complex, showcasing its unique dance style and aesthetic characteristics. According to “Knowledge Compendium” by Gongzhu Yundan Gyatso, the dancer’s upper body movements should be as fierce as a lion, the waist movements seductive, the limbs as coordinated as machinery, and the muscles relaxed. The entire body should move slowly and solemnly, with trembling knees, agile footwork, and an overall vigorous posture.

In “Reba” dance performances, male dancers’ upper body movements resemble a lion’s ferocity, demonstrating a robust, agile, and swift dance style, fully displaying masculinity and strength. The seductive waist movements and nimble footwork require dancers to maintain grace and elegance even under tense rhythms. Techniques in “Reba” drum artistry, such as various drum flips and high-low strikes, demand high levels of skill and bodily control from the dancers.

“Reba” dance not only possesses unique drum techniques and strong artistic appeal but also incorporates elements from other performance forms such as Xianzi, Guozhuang, and Tap dance. It blends singing, dancing, acrobatics, and Qigong, creating a distinctive stage effect and audiovisual enjoyment. While “Reba” dance rarely includes high-difficulty movements from Guozhuang and Xianzi, it features many humorous segments, highlighting the dance’s diversity and artistic comprehensiveness.

### **3.2 The Ethnic Cultural Significance of “Reba” Dance**

“Reba” dance has a long history, and its performance forms and content largely reflect the religious beliefs and life attitudes of the Tibetan people, making it a crucial medium for understanding Tibetan culture. In the Tibetan “Reba” drum solo “Between Heaven and Earth,” the dancer’s frequent drum beating, walking, accelerating, running, and jumping movements portray the strong and graceful demeanor of female “Reba” artists and their strong desire to escape life’s difficulties and pursue a better life. These dance movements are not just artistic expressions but also vivid interpretations of the Tibetan people’s life attitudes and religious beliefs, demonstrating their longing for a better life and devout faith.

In this performance, dancers coordinate high-pitched singing and chanting with a series of devout prayer movements while holding the

drum, illustrating the philosophy of “oneness with the drum” and “oneness with the universe.” This reflects the “Reba” artists’ celebration of life and their exuberant life spirit. This artistic form not only reflects the aesthetic concepts and life attitudes of the Tibetan people but also embodies their hopes and emotional pursuits, making “Reba” dance an important vehicle for expressing the emotions and aspirations of the Tibetan people. Widely spread in Tibetan regions, “Reba” dance has become a national intangible cultural heritage, with profound historical and cultural roots. This not only affirms the importance of “Reba” dance in Tibetan culture but also highlights its unique value within the multicultural system of the Chinese nation.

### **3.3 The Social-Cultural Value of “Reba” Dance**

“Reba” dance holds significant social cultural value in addition to its ethnic-cultural significance. During the nomadic journeys of Tibetan families, “Reba” performances were closely linked with commercial activities, serving as a means of sustaining the survival and development of tribes, small groups, and families. The “Reba” art holds special meaning for nomadic groups, bearing the value of cultural identity. Through “Reba” dance performances, wandering Tibetans find cultural support and spiritual solace in foreign lands, thereby enhancing their sense of ethnic identity and belonging.

As part of the Tibetan dance system, “Reba” dance facilitated ethnic unity in an era of limited information, bringing together Tibetans of different ages, genders, and social statuses to dance “Reba.” This unity and sense of identity strengthened the connections among the Tibetan people and showcased the vitality and diversity of Tibetan culture to the outside world. The unique form of “Reba” dance attracted people from various ethnic groups to dance together, promoting ethnic solidarity and contributing to the rejuvenation of the Chinese nation. “Reba” dance is not only a symbol of Tibetan culture but also an important bridge for ethnic unity and cultural integration, promoting social harmony.

Furthermore, the performance form and content of “Reba” dance continue to evolve and innovate to meet modern societal needs and aesthetic preferences. By integrating modern dance elements into traditional “Reba” dance, its performance forms are enriched, its artistic appeal enhanced, making it more enjoyable and attractive. This innovation not only preserves traditional culture but also revitalizes “Reba” dance in the new era, continuing to play a crucial role in Tibetan culture.

## **4. Conclusion**

The Tibetan “Reba” dance, an integral part of Tibetan culture, embodies a unique combination of sports, dance, poetry, and music. It holds significant value for dancer training and cultural preservation, promoting physical fitness and artistic appreciation, and contributing to social harmony.

However, rapid societal changes pose a threat to its preservation. Future research should focus on developing strategies to protect and promote the “Reba” dance in modern society.

## **References**

- [1] Wu, J. Y. (2024). Study on the Application of Reba Drums in Tibetan Dance Performance [J]. Sichuan Normal University.
- [2] Shen, H. (2015). The Role of Reba Drums in Dance Creation [J]. *Voice of the Yellow River*, (04): 99.
- [3] Yang, M. (2014). Research on Folk Dance Props of Chinese Ethnic Minorities: Examples of Five Ethnic Groups including the Mongolian [M]. Central University for Nationalities Press.
- [4] Li, Y. (2016). Discussion on the Training Value of Tibetan “Reba Drums” in Teaching [J]. *Music Life*, 2016(12): 89-90.

# Language Learning Perfectionism, Success, and Academic Resilience of Chinese Non-English Major Students

Yuanyuan Li

Lyceum of the Philippines University Batangas, Batangas, 4200, Philippines

**Abstract:** This study explores the relationship between language learning perfectionism, success, and academic resilience among Chinese non-English major students. Using a quantitative approach, data were collected from students across various programs and analyzed to determine the impact of perfectionism on academic outcomes and resilience.

**Keywords:** Language Learning Perfectionism; Success; Academic Resilience; Chinese Non-English Major Students; College English

## 1. Introduction

Language learning perfectionism is a common phenomenon among students, characterized by a relentless pursuit of flawlessness and a critical self-evaluation of performance<sup>[1]</sup>. Success in language learning includes both the attainment of specific language skills and the ability to use the language competently in real-life situations. Academic resilience allows students to bounce back from failure, adapt to changing circumstances, and continue striving towards their educational goals. This study investigates the perfectionism among Chinese non-English major students and examines its impact on their academic success and resilience. Understanding these dynamics can inform the development of effective educational strategies and support mechanisms.

## 2. Methodology

The study involved 405 students in Taishan College of Science and Technology, with a gender distribution of 45.4% male and 54.6% female. The participants were from various programs from freshmen and sophomores who take College English course.

Data were collected using standardized questionnaires assessing language learning perfectionism<sup>[2]</sup>, success<sup>[3]</sup> and academic resilience<sup>[4]</sup>. The responses were analyzed to identify patterns and relationships among the variables.

## 3. Results and Discussion

The majority of the respondents were freshmen (61.5%), followed by sophomores (38.5%). The distribution across different programs was relatively balanced, with Communication Engineering (24.7%) and Administrative Management (18.8%) having the highest representation.

Table 1 Percentage Distribution of the Respondents Profile

Sex	Frequency	Percentage %
Male	184	45.4
Female	221	54.6
Grade Level		
Freshman	249	61.5
Sophomore	156	38.5
Program		
Business	54	13.3
Big Data	54	13.3
Mechanical Engineering	68	16.8
Communication Engineering	100	24.7
Art Media	53	13.1
Administrative Management	76	18.8

The study measured language learning perfectionism using indicators such as Concern over Mistakes, Personal Standards, Doubt about Action, and Organization. The composite mean score of 1.70 indicates a general disagreement with perfectionistic tendencies among the respondents. This suggests that most of the respondents do not exhibit strong perfectionistic behaviors, such as excessive concern over mistakes, setting excessively high personal standards, doubting their actions, or being overly organized. In other words, the students surveyed do not typically strive for flawlessness or engage in critical self-evaluation to an extreme degree when it comes to language learning.

Table 2 Summary Table on Language Learning Perfectionism

Indicators	Weighted Mean	Verbal Interpretation	Rank
1. Concern over Mistakes	1.88	Disagree	1
2. Personal Standards	1.65	Disagree	2
3. Doubt about Action	1.62	Disagree	4
4. Organization	1.63	Disagree	3
Composite Mean	1.70	Disagree	

Legend: 3.50 – 4.00 = Strongly Agree; 2.50 – 3.49 = Agree; 1.50 – 2.49 = Disagree; 1.00 - 1.49 = Strongly Disagree

Academic success was evaluated through General Academic Skills, Perceived Instructor, Concentration, and External Motivation. The composite mean score of 3.06 suggests that students generally agree with positive academic success indicators. This means that most of the students perceive themselves as having good general academic skills, benefiting from effective instruction, being able to concentrate well, and being motivated by external factors. In other words, the students surveyed feel confident in their academic abilities and are likely experiencing success in their academic endeavors.

Table 3 Summary Table on Success

Indicators	Weighted Mean	Verbal Interpretation	Rank
1. General Academic Skills	2.91	Agree	3
2. Perceived Instructor	3.07	Agree	2
3. Concentration	2.82	Agree	4
4. External Motivation	3.45	Agree	1
Composite Mean	3.06	Agree	

Academic resilience was assessed using Perceived Happiness, Empathy, Persistence, and Self-regulation. The composite mean score of 2.96 indicates a general agreement with resilience indicators. This suggests that most students perceive themselves as resilient, demonstrating characteristics such as perceived happiness, empathy, persistence, and self-regulation. In other words, the students surveyed feel capable of handling academic challenges, maintaining a positive outlook, and persistently working towards their goals despite difficulties.

Table 4 Summary Table on Academic Resilience

Indicators	Weighted Mean	Verbal Interpretation	Rank
1. Perceived Happiness	2.87	Agree	2
2. Empathy	2.78	Agree	3
3. Persistence	2.76	Agree	4
4. Self-regulation	3.41	Agree	1
Composite Mean	2.96	Agree	

The study found significant differences in language learning perfectionism when grouped according to sex, grade, and program. Based on the post hoc test conducted, males showed lower perfectionistic tendencies than females[5]. Sophomores exhibited higher personal standards and greater organizational skills. Students from Communication Engineering and Administrative Management reported higher perfectionistic tendencies.

Table 5 Difference of Responses on Language Learning Perfectionism When Grouped According to Profile

Sex	f-value	p-value	Interpretation
Concern over Mistakes	26.960	0.000	Highly Significant
Personal Standards	15.930	0.000	Highly Significant
Doubt about Action	16.225	0.000	Highly Significant
Organization	20.769	0.000	Highly Significant

Grade			
Concern over Mistakes	2.676	0.103	Not Significant
Personal Standards	11.466	0.001	Highly Significant
Doubt about Action	3.768	0.053	Not Significant
Organization	4.424	0.036	Significant
Program			
Concern over Mistakes	62.682	0.000	Highly Significant
Personal Standards	33.707	0.000	Highly Significant
Doubt about Action	33.907	0.000	Highly Significant
Organization	32.850	0.000	Highly Significant

Legend: Significant at p-value < 0.05

Significant negative correlations were found between perfectionism indicators and academic success and resilience. For instance, concern over mistakes was negatively correlated with general academic skills, perceived instructor support, concentration, and external motivation[6]. Similarly, personal standards and doubt about action negatively impacted these success indicators. These findings suggest that higher perfectionism is associated with lower academic success and resilience.

Table 6 Relationship Between Language Learning Perfectionism and Success

	r-value	p-value	Interpretation
Concern over Mistakes			
General Academic Skills	-.468**	0.000	Highly Significant
Perceived Instructor	-.448**	0.000	Highly Significant
Concentration	-.294**	0.000	Highly Significant
External Motivation	-.344**	0.000	Highly Significant
Personal Standards			
General Academic Skills	-.374**	0.000	Highly Significant
Perceived Instructor	-.365**	0.000	Highly Significant
Concentration	-.224**	0.000	Highly Significant
External Motivation	-.294**	0.000	Highly Significant
Doubt about Action			
General Academic Skills	-.358**	0.000	Highly Significant
Perceived Instructor	-.348**	0.000	Highly Significant
Concentration	-.189**	0.000	Highly Significant
External Motivation	-.271**	0.000	Highly Significant
Organization			
General Academic Skills	-.335**	0.000	Highly Significant
Perceived Instructor	-.331**	0.000	Highly Significant
Concentration	-.172**	0.000	Highly Significant
External Motivation	-.274**	0.000	Highly Significant

Table 7 Relationship Between Language Learning Perfectionism and Academic Resilience

	r-value	p-value	Interpretation
Concern over Mistakes			
Perceived Happiness	-.423**	0.000	Highly Significant
Empathy	-.367**	0.000	Highly Significant
Persistence	-.384**	0.000	Highly Significant
Self-regulation	-.241**	0.000	Highly Significant
Personal Standards			
Perceived Happiness	-.328**	0.000	Highly Significant
Empathy	-.306**	0.000	Highly Significant
Persistence	-.319**	0.000	Highly Significant
Self-regulation	-.223**	0.000	Highly Significant
Doubt about Action			
Perceived Happiness	-.273**	0.000	Highly Significant
Empathy	-.260**	0.000	Highly Significant

Persistence	-.227**	0.000	Highly Significant
Self-regulation	-.142**	0.000	Highly Significant
<hr/>			
Organization			
Perceived Happiness	-.308**	0.000	Highly Significant
Empathy	-.277**	0.000	Highly Significant
Persistence	-.294**	0.000	Highly Significant
Self-regulation	-.202**	0.000	Highly Significant

## 4. Conclusion

Language learning perfectionism significantly impacts the academic success and resilience of Chinese non-English major students. Addressing these perfectionistic tendencies through targeted interventions can enhance students' academic experiences and outcomes. Future research should explore the long-term effects of these interventions and the potential for broader application across different student populations.

## 5. Recommendations

To mitigate the negative effects of language learning perfectionism, the study proposes several interventions, including awareness workshops, growth mindset training, and cultural exchange programs. Enhancing language learning success can be achieved through strategy workshops, interactive activities, and language immersion programs. Improving academic resilience involves resilience training, support groups, mentorship programs, and regular assessments with feedback.

## References

- [1]Flett, G. L., & Hewitt, P. L. (2014). Perfectionism in childhood and adolescence: A developmental analysis. In *Perfectionism: Theory, research, and treatment* (pp. 89-132). American Psychological Association.
- [2]Frost, R. O., Marten, P., Lahart, C., & Rosenblate, R. (1990). The dimensions of perfectionism. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 14(5), 449-468.
- [3] Prevatt, F., Petscher, Y., Proctor, B., Hurst, A., & Adams, K. (2006). The revised learning and study strategies inventory (LASSI): An evaluation of competing models. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 66, 448– 458.
- [4]Kim, T. Y., & Kim, Y. K. (2016). The impact of resilience on L2 learners' motivated behaviour and proficiency in L2 learning. *Educational Studies*, 43(1), 1–15.
- [5]Bong, M. (2008). Effects of parent–child relationships and classroom goal structures on motivation, help-seeking avoidance, and cheating. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 100(3), 725-736.
- [6]MacIntyre, P. D., & Gregersen, T. (2012). Emotions that facilitate language learning: The positive-broadening power of the imagination. *Studies in Second Language Learning and Teaching*, 2(2), 193-213.
- [7]Wang, L. (2021). The role of students' self-regulated learning, grit, and resilience in second language learning. *Frontiers in psychology*, 12, 800488.



# An Analysis of the Mother-daughter Relationship in Joy Luck Club

Xingxing Li

Meishan Pharmaceutical College, Meishan620010, China

---

**Abstract:** Amy Tan is a remarkable Chinese American female writer. The Joy Luck Club is her famous work. Its publication has aroused the upsurge of Chinese American literature and made great contributions to the mainstream of Chinese American literature. In the Joy Luck Club, it mainly describes the process from conflict to reconciliation between mothers and daughters. How does the mother use the love story to let her daughter learn some essence of Chinese culture, and get strength from it to get out of the real dilemma. Thus, it points out that the integration of mother and daughter is a strategy that mother and daughter use love to overcome obstacles and readjust their cultural identity to survive harmoniously in American society.

The four mothers in this article are deeply affected by the Chinese traditional culture. They not only keep the traditional Chinese custom and culture in daily life, but also inherit the typical Chinese traditional virtues such as respecting the old, loving the young and filial piety to the old. On the contrary, the young generation was born and grew up in the open-minded and free land of the United States. When the two generations grew up in different cultural environments, and finally conflicts could not be avoided. It also shows that there are misunderstandings and contradictions between mother and daughter due to the differences of cultural class and race, but through the mother's self-report and deep love between them, the conflicts and misunderstandings are becoming resolved.

This paper tries to analyze the relationship between mother and daughter in the novel. Firstly, the author introduces the background of the author and the characters, then describes the evolution and development of the relationship, and specifically analyzes the reasons for the evolution of the mother daughter relationship. Finally, according to the reference of the mother daughter relationship described in the paper and the reflection on the development and evolution of the mother daughter relationship of today, the young generation expresses a yearning for a better mother daughter relationship.

**Keywords:** Mother-daughter Conflicts; Cultural Differences; the Root Cause

---

## 1. Evolution of the Mother-daughter Relationship

### 1.1 The Conflict

#### 1.1.1 Suyuan and June

In the novel, Suyuan think that the united states has different development opportunities than other places, she put everything on her daughter. But June exquisitely aspires to a free lifestyle in the West, to be an ordinary person. Wu Suyuan imposes traditional ideas on equitiveness, but her daughter thinks that she is a mother's daughter, she is not her slave. This is different from China. She deserves democracy and equality, just like other white people. Then June resisted any hope that her mother had for her since she was young, and often let her mother down on her. In the end, her mother no longer strictly required her as she had before, and gave up her determination to cultivate her as a genius. She eventually disappointed her mother and failed to get her mother's approval, and she felt that she could not have enough courage to communicate openly with her mother, nor did she ask why she had such high expectations to her.

#### 1.1.2 An Mei and Rose

Marriage issue is the main contradiction between An mei and Rose. Rose has always held an attitude of disagreement with his mother and Chinese culture. In her opinion, American culture is superior to other cultures. She felt that her mother was the representative of ignorance. When her daughter encounters a marriage crisis, she would prefer to consult a psychiatrist rather than her mother. The mother thinks that the psychiatrist will only make people get worse and confused. However, such things as seemingly small things in life, but cause some troubles between mother and daughter. The meekness in Rose's character was inherited by her mother. The character of this typical Chinese

girl almost made her the biggest victim of marriage, but fortunately she got more kindness and meekness compared with her mother. Rose married an American. She was always not confident when faced with her husband and could not look up like a person. She makes no decision about everything, and always let her husband decide on things that require an idea, because she thinks her decision is not better than her husband's. However, she began to think that she was avoiding the responsibility between them, so he even wanted to divorce. But her mother, An mei encouraged Rose: "Why can't you talk with your husband by yourself?" Rose listened to her mother's advice and communicated with her husband, which surprised her husband. Eventually saved her marriage.

## **1.2 The Integration**

This kind of mother-daughter relationship that reflect in the Joy Luck Club is not always immutable. Although there are many contradictions and conflicts between the Chinese mother and the American daughter, as the daughters grow up, the mothers "are the help objects for the daughters when they encounter difficulties and setbacks", so they are finally understood and accepted by the daughters. The result of this reconciliation is the joint efforts of both mother and daughter. Mother gradually changed her way of education, stopped imposing her will on her daughter, and tried to integrate into American society. The daughters also gradually realized their mother's good intentions, the power of maternal love, and the fact that the mother's advice did solve the problem. So gradually they began to understand and accept their mother. The different cultures between the two countries finally merged in the reconciliation of the mother-daughter relationship.

## **2. Reasons for the Change in Mother-daughter Relationship**

### **2.1 Generational Differences**

In the Joy Luck Club, language is a very important factor in these conflicts. Mothers spend most of their time speaking Chinese with their daughters, who usually speak English and ignore their mothers. They often pretend not to hear what their mother is saying to them. The mother has also been reluctant to tell her daughter their secret and worry, and she only talk to her daughter after they practice oral English well. "She waited, year after year, until she could communicate with her daughter in perfect English," the article mentioned. Because mother can't speak English fluently, it's bound to be a barrier between them. In the perspective of mothers, the novel Joy Luck Club represents an effective way to realize their dreams. The purpose of this little party is to pursue happiness and communication. Most of the members of this congregation experienced the hegemony and domination of American culture. But at the party, they can speak Chinese at will, and it can increase their confidence to face the psychological pressure from their husbands and daughters.

In the United States, there is usually a certain distance between children and the family, especially when the children grow up, parents usually do not give more care to the children, hoping that their children can face the future life independently. And after they grow up, they create their own future through their own efforts instead of relying on their parents. Chinese families often have inferiority, which is very different from the equality and independence of American families. So the novel also reveals this emotion when describing the emotion of mother and daughter. It can be seen that there are different conflicts and reconciliation between different countries. Each country has its own way of survival and communication. There must be some conflicts between different education methods. To cater to the differences between them, we should learn to adapt. In the end, the daughters realized what they could not reach their mother for a long time. therefore. Not only did they find that they had become so similar to their mothers, but also how much they needed their mother's guidance. At last, After years of storms. They finally saw what was initiated between themselves and their mother.

### **2.2 Cultural Differences**

China has a long history of cultural development, with a five-thousand-year-old cultural development that differs from other countries. However, American has only 200 years of history and culture, which leads to large differences between other countries. In our country, the emotion between mother and daughter is inborn, unlike American culture, Chinese-style maternal love cannot be replaced by some superficial things, and Chinese parents have a high degree of pampering their children, hoping that children will grow better under their own companionship. However, the United States promotes individual freedom and independent thinking, and children have cultivated independent and

independent behavior habits from the beginning. When they are about to become adults, they will live alone and start a new life. Therefore, after coming abroad, Chinese mothers do not know whether their education methods are correct. They have to accept a new cultural perspective, a culture that is very different from traditional Chinese culture. In the process of transitioning to another culture, it is difficult for them to adapt. Many times, daughters do not know how to face the secular perspectives of the outside world and often feel the emotional conflict with their mothers.

If you want to survive better abroad, you must understand the cultural customs of the country and the differences with the national culture, and you must adapt to the cultural trends of the country. The main purpose of the whole novel is to analyze two different cultural differences and call for the development of a way for their children to educate them instead of imposing their own wishes on the children. To better accustomed to this kind of life, mothers should begin to reconcile. That is to say, we should keep our own way of life and make some new in daily life. The educational value of the novel "The Joy Luck Club" is well educated at home and abroad. It is not only an analysis of the two cultural differences, but also reveals an ancient Chinese culture that is different from the development trend abroad. In the development of modernization today, it is gradually becoming more important to cultivate an independent personality. The story between the mother and her daughter is the main clue to the development of the novel. From the cultural differences embodied between people to the exposure of cultural differences between different countries, that is the reason why the novel is very popular with readers. When the daughters take the American spirit of independent will to pursue career and love marriage, but everywhere hit a wall. The harsh reality makes daughters start to reflect and gradually understand their mother.

In the end, the contradictions caused by the lack of communication have been reconciled, but they have deeply exposed the differences between Chinese and American culture. China advocates teamwork, while the United States advocates independence. Two cultures will always have one strong side, while the other will be weak. It is precisely because of this cultural strength that the mother-daughter relationship has led to the struggle. However, no matter how much the daughters have conflicts with their mothers, they will eventually return to their mothers and take nutrition from the mother with power towards the future.

### **3. Reflections on Mother-daughter Relationship**

#### **3.1 Comparison with Modern Mother-daughter Relationship**

Mother's love for daughter in the novel is equivalent to contemporary mother's love for daughter. However, mothers in the Joy Luck Club are loving their daughters in the way of China. Their love for their daughter is certain, but their deep-rooted traditional education from China and feudal ideas hinder the distance to their daughter. However, they are also victims, have the same ideal to strictly educate their daughters. Hope to get rid of the unfortunate fate of the previous generation and live a better life that they want. The maternal love shown by their mothers to daughters is obviously Chinese way, and the way Chinese mothers show their mothers' love is not the same as American mothers. They often not express love in surface or verbal like American mothers, nor will they just say "I love you".

#### **3.2 Mother-daughter Relationship of the Younger Generation**

Mother is indeed the greatest person in the world who seems to be recognized. The younger mother-daughter relationship, such as the mother-daughter relationship of the post-90s generation, which has the mother's love for the daughters in the Joy Luck Club, though it seems that there are fewer conflicts with the mother. With the time goes by, the mother-daughter relationship of the younger generation has received higher education. Most parents will not force their children to do things they do not like. They will allow their children to develop more freely, but there are also a few mothers. Still subject to the traditional thinking of to be a talent, imposing her choice on the child. I believe that most young daughters will also have a discordant relationship with their mothers. Mothers always think that their approach is correct. They always think that their daughters have not grow up. They also think that their daughters do not understand a lot and need to be supervised. On the surface, there is a harmonious mother-daughter relationship, but I don't know how much dissatisfaction is hidden in the daughter. Because of the constraints of the mother, all dissatisfaction will be accumulated in the bottom of my heart, until one day all the dissatisfaction will be full and overflow.

From the novel, we can see that each woman's growth is not independent, affected by the surrounding environment, and most affected by their mother. In the Joy Luck Club, the growth of the daughters is guided by their mothers using their own growth experience to guide them on the right path. In the critical period of the girls' growth, the mother did not hesitate to share the hard life stories of her past with them. From this point of view, we can also see the relationship between Chinese mothers and daughters. This shows that although as an American Chinese female writer, the traditional way of expressing the love of children to children in traditional Chinese culture has been inherited by the writers, promoted in the works. As Suyuan said: "Everything starts in the East: Japan starts from the East, and wind comes from the East." As descendants of Chinese descent, they must have a correct understanding of Chinese traditional culture during their own growth. It can neither accept it in its entirety nor deny it blindly. Only by finding a suitable integration point can we find our own growth model and truly realize the inheritance of culture.

## References

- [1]Li Yuanyuan. An Analysis of Lindo Jong's Androgyny in The Joy Luck Club. Guangzhou: Jinan University, 2017.
- [2]Wang Xiaoyan. Cultural and Generational Differences in The Joy Luck Club. Sino-US English Teaching, 2014.
- [3]Yang Boxiu. Interpretation on Cultural Conflicts between America and China and the Conflict Root Cause Reflected in The Joy Luck Club. Jingzhou: Yangtze University, 2016.
- [4]Duane P. Schultz, Sydney Ellen Schultz. Theories of Personality[M]. Beijing: Peking University Press, 2007.
- [5]Ling A. Between Words: Women Writers of Chinese Ancestry [M]. Columbia: Pergamon Press, 1990.

# A Review of High Performance Work Systems and IT Employee's Innovation in Chinese Smartphone Industry: Insights and Implications

Miao Li

Asia-Europe Institute, Universiti Malaya, Kuala Lumpur 50603, Malaysia

---

**Abstract:** The innovative behavior of IT employees is crucial for smartphone companies to gain a competitive edge in both the Chinese and international markets. This paper reviews the relationship between High Performance Work Systems (HPWS) and the innovative behavior of IT employees in the Chinese smartphone industry. The review of previous studies indicates that the relationship between HPWS and employee innovation (IWB) is dialectical, particularly for knowledge-based and technical IT employees. Our study confirms the necessity for future empirical research to further explore the specific relationship between HPWS and IWB.

**Keywords:** HPWS; Innovation; IT Employee; Smartphone

---

## 1. Introduction

The importance of smartphone technology (SMT) has become increasingly evident, particularly highlighted by global events such as the COVID-19 pandemic, which underscored the vital role of mobile technologies in maintaining societal well-being. During the pandemic, people relied more than ever on their smartphones to stay connected with others, remain informed, entertained, and even manage health concerns through telemedicine (Cai, 2022). Moreover, the ongoing rollout of 5G technology is set to further revolutionize this landscape, with expectations that it will significantly benefit all sectors of the global economy, particularly enhancing services and manufacturing. In terms of economic contribution, SMT generated an impressive \$4.4 trillion in economic value added globally in 2020, accounting for 5.1% of the global GDP.

Specifically for China, the development of smartphone technology is crucial for industrial upgrading and economic growth, with the government providing substantial policy support to foster the advancement of high-tech enterprises. By focusing on IT employees, Chinese smartphone companies can better integrate into the global value chain, leverage advanced technologies, and eventually drive the development of indigenous innovations. This approach is essential for reducing dependence on other countries' technologies and fostering a more resilient and self-sufficient technology ecosystem. The Chinese government has recognized these challenges and strongly encourages local technology firms to intensify their IT efforts, a move aimed at fostering a more self-reliant tech industry (The Diplomat, 2023). In the highly competitive IT sector, the innovative capacity and knowledge reserve of employees are crucial.

This study reviews the relevant literature on the background, HPWS, and IWB. It is crucial to understand each of these constructs to establish a logical foundation for the current research. This overview will help to contextualize the relationships and mechanisms at play, providing a robust framework for further research.

## 2. Literature Review

### 2.1 Review of IT employees in Chinese smartphone industry

In the context of the Chinese market, there is a noted deficiency in the technologies required to create high-end mobile phones, with core technologies predominantly reliant on foreign countries (Cai, 2022). This technological dependency underscores a critical gap in the China's capability to produce high-end components and systems. Therefore, from the perspective of the global value chain, it becomes imperative for emerging economic entities within the Chinese mobile phone industry to focus on IT and position themselves upstream in the industry chain.

Furthermore, the IT sector, noted for its intense pressure and high stakes, often pushes employees to the brink of exhaustion (Menon

& Krishnan, 2021). This stressful environment makes it imperative for companies to focus on strategic HRM practices that not only enhance employee well-being but also contribute to their professional and personal development. Effective HRM practices in IT can lead to greater innovation outcomes, enhancing job satisfaction and retention rates (Kim & Park, 2021). Thus, it becomes evident that for China's smartphone industry to maintain its competitive edge and innovate independently, significant emphasis must be placed on nurturing and supporting its IT workforce through thoughtful and effective HRM strategies.

## **2.2 Review of IWB**

The study of IWB emerges from a focus on organizational innovation and employee actions. With the advent of the knowledge economy, innovation is recognized as a key factor for organizations to gain competitive advantage and ensure sustainable development. Therefore, researching how employees generate and implement new ideas, and subsequently drive organizational innovation, has become essential. In today's competitive market, organizations must continually innovate to adapt to changes. Studying IWB helps organizations better understand and promote innovative behaviors among employees, thereby enhancing organizational innovation capability and competitiveness.

Recent research emphasizes that the study of IWB has evolved significantly. Historically, innovation was considered a characteristic inherent to employees with creative personalities, primarily focusing on the recruitment and selection of such individuals (Ajilouni, 2021). However, recent studies have expanded this view to understand how HRM practices can stimulate innovation among existing employees (Zhao et al., 2022; Wang et al., 2022). This shift is crucial as organizations need to continuously innovate to maintain a competitive edge in a rapidly changing market environment. For instance, IWB is now defined as the generation, promotion, and realization of new ideas within a work role (Breidenthal et al., 2020).

Academically, the study of IWB has garnered widespread attention. Numerous scholars have dedicated efforts to exploring the intrinsic mechanisms, influencing factors, and outcomes of IWB, leading to the development of various theoretical models and research methods. For example, various factors influencing IWB, such as team atmosphere, leadership behavior, and employee traits, have been examined, with numerous empirical studies further validating the positive impact of IWB on organizational innovation and performance, thereby underscoring the academic significance of this field (Wang et al., 2022; Zheng et al., 2022).

## **2.3 Review of HPWS**

HPWS was first explained by Huselid in 1995 and was given importance by Appelbaum et al. in 2000. HPWS according to them refer to "A group of HR practices that are designed to enhance employee competence, motivation and commitment" (Appelbaum et al., 2000). Based on Delery and Doty (1996)'s theory, HPWS is achieved through results-oriented appraisals, profit sharing, clear job descriptions, employment security, internal career opportunities, training, and participation.

In recent years, the theories concerning HPWS can be categorized into two main perspectives. On one hand, behavior-based theories such as AMO theory, social exchange theory, and self-determination theory suggest that HPWS can influence employee attitudes and motivations, subsequently affecting their behavior (Miao & Cao, 2020). On the other hand, organization-level theories like the job demands-resources model and the capital integration perspective explain the mechanisms of HPWS (Wei et al., 2020).

## **2.4 Relationship between HPWS and IWB**

Many scholars have emphasized the positive relationship between HPWS and IWB in empirical studies. Yan & Bai (2016) demonstrated through empirical analysis that training, promotion and decision-making could significantly influence employees' innovative behavior in Chinese high-tech enterprises, with training development and reward promotion having the most substantial effects. Zheng et al. (2020) conducted a survey in the Yangzi River Delta's industrial parks, revealing that HPWS significantly boosts open innovation. The study found that HPWS practices enhance employees' learning orientation, supporting their ability to manage and utilize external knowledge. Another empirical study based on 366 leader-employee paired samples explored the relationship between HPWS and IWB from the perspective of self-determination theory, revealing that autonomy mediates this positive relationship while formalization plays a moderating role (Sun &

Wang, 2016).

However, some scholars believe that HPWS cannot effectively promote IWB of knowledge workers. Research (Sun and Wang, 2016) shows that anticipating rewards can lead individuals to focus on short-term goals and outcomes rather than groundbreaking thinking and problem-solving. Encouraging employees through external rewards and incentives (performance-oriented assessments and compensation systems) may primarily stimulate extrinsic motivation, which is not conducive to fostering creative work performance and extra-role behaviors beyond the job description. An investigation based on HRM process theory also pointed out that organizations might enhance control over employees through performance management models (Islam et al., 2022). Scholars argue that increasing employees' controlled motivation will significantly reduce their autonomy and self-management at work, leading to decreased individual performance and innovation (Islam et al., 2021; Sun and Wang, 2016) .

### 3. Conclusion

Although many scholars posit a positive correlation between HPWS and IWB, some researchers remain skeptical or even hold opposing views, particularly concerning knowledge-based and technical workers. This divergence in opinions suggests the necessity for further empirical studies to explore the specific relationship between HPWS and IWB.

### References

- [1]Al-Ajlouni, M. I. (2021). Can high-performance work systems (HPWS) promote organisational innovation? Employee perspective-taking, engagement and creativity in a moderated mediation model. *Employee Relations*, 43(2), 373-397.
- [2]Appelbaum, E., Bailey, T. R., Berg, P. B., & Kalleberg, A. L. (2000). Manufacturing Advantage: Why High-Performance Work Systems Pay Off. *Academy of Management Review*, 26(3)
- [3]Cai, T. (2022). Development and Future Forecast of China's Mobile Phone Industry. 2022 2nd
- [4]International Conference on Enterprise Management and Economic Development
- [5]Delery, J. E., & Doty, D. H. (1996). Modes of Theorizing in Strategic Human Resource Management: Tests of Universalistic, Contingency, and Configurational Performance Predictions. *Academy of Management Journal*, 39(4), 802-835.
- [6]Islam, T., Khan, M. M., Ahmed, I., & Mahmood, K. (2021). Promoting in-role and extra-role green behavior through ethical leadership: mediating role of green HRM and moderating role of individual green values. *International Journal of Manpower*, 42(6), 1102-1123.
- [7]Kim, T., & Park, S. (2021). HRM practices and innovation outcomes in IT sector: Evidence from Korea. *Asian Business & Management*, 20(3), 345-367.
- [8]Miao, R., & Cao, Y. (2020). The impact of HPWS on employee innovation behavior from a capital integration perspective: A cross-level study. *Economic Science*, (5), 72-85.
- [9]Menon, R. B., & Krishnan, M. (2021). A Study on HPWS and Employee Performance with the
- [10]Employees of IT Sector. *International Journal of Early Childhood Special Education*, 13(2)
- [11]SUN, J., & WANG, H. (2016). The potential mechanisms involved in the negative effect of high
- [12]performance work system. *Advances in Psychological Science*, 24(7), 1091.
- [13]The Diplomat. (2023). China Prioritizes 3 Strategic Technologies in Its Great Power Competition. Retrieved from The Diplomat.
- [14]Wang, H., Chen, X., & Xie, M. (2022). Employee innovative behavior and workplace wellbeing: Leader support for innovation and coworker ostracism as mediators. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 13.
- [15]Wei, W., Peng, J., & Hua, B. (2020). The double-edged sword effect of HPWS on employee breakthrough creativity from a resource conservation perspective. *Management Review*, (8), 215-227.
- [16]Zhao, G., Luan, Y., & Ding, H. (2022). Job control and employee innovative behavior: A moderated mediation model. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 13.



# Application of Optimization Algorithm in Automatic Production Scheduling

Weijuan Li, Jun Wang, Rui Guo, Jian Zhang, Feng Su

Shandong Vocational College of Information Technology, Weifang 261041, China

---

**Abstract:** Automatic production scheduling is a crucial activity in modern manufacturing, which involves the rational arrangement of production tasks to maximize production efficiency, minimize manufacturing costs, and meet customer needs. In the increasingly complex and diverse production environment, production demand may also change at any time, and traditional production scheduling methods are no longer able to meet the needs of modern manufacturing. Optimization algorithms, as an efficient and accurate decision-making tool, have been widely applied in the field of automatic production scheduling. This article aims to explore the application of optimization algorithms in automatic production scheduling, analyze their principles, types, advantages and disadvantages, as well as application cases in industrial practice, in order to provide reference for research and practice in related fields such as production scheduling.

**Keywords:** Optimization Algorithm; Automatic Production Scheduling; Production Scheduling; Resource Allocation; Optimization Strategy

---

## 1. Introduction

With the advent of Industry 4.0, the manufacturing industry is facing unprecedented challenges and opportunities. The increasingly complex and diverse production environment has gradually revealed the limitations of traditional manual production methods, making it difficult to meet the modern manufacturing industry's pursuit of high efficiency, high quality, and low cost. In this context, automatic production scheduling technology has emerged, providing a new production scheduling and planning solution for the manufacturing industry by integrating advanced computer technology, software tools, and mathematical optimization algorithms.

## 2. Automatic production scheduling issues

Automatic scheduling problem refers to the process of using algorithms and software tools to automatically arrange and optimize production tasks and job sequences in the fields of production management and computer science. The basic principle is to input information such as production plans, production resources, and production tasks into a computer system, optimize scheduling through algorithms, generate the optimal production plan, and achieve production scheduling and execution through an automated control system. The core goal is to improve production efficiency, reduce unfinished work, ensure timely delivery, and optimize resource utilization.

### 2.1 Basic elements

- 1) Tasks: The various tasks or orders that need to be completed.
- 2) Resources: The machinery, equipment, workers, raw materials, etc. required to complete the task.
- 3) Time: The start and end time of each task, as well as the time planning of the entire production process.
- 4) Constraints: Constraints in the production process, including machine capabilities, manpower availability, delivery deadlines, etc.
- 5) Performance Indicators: Standards used to evaluate the quality of production scheduling, such as production cycle, delay time, resource utilization, etc.

### 2.2 Problem characteristics

- 1) Complexity: The combination of multiple tasks, resources, and constraints makes the problem very complex.
- 2) Dynamicity: New orders constantly arrive, machines may malfunction, and operation times may be uncertain, all of which increase the dynamism of the problem.
- 3) Multi objective: It is usually necessary to balance multiple performance metrics, such as minimizing latency and maximizing re-

source utilization.

- 4) Uncertainty: The production process may be affected by many unpredictable factors, such as machine failures, urgent orders, etc.

### 3. Optimization algorithm type

Optimization algorithms, as the core of automatic production scheduling systems, use mathematical models and algorithmic strategies to find the optimal production plan, which is of great significance for improving production efficiency, reducing production costs, and meeting customer needs.

A mathematical technique for resolving optimization issues, the Optimization Algorithm, is founded on ascertaining the minimum or maximum value of a function within certain restrictions. In automatic production scheduling, the goal of optimization algorithms is to find the production plan that minimizes production costs, maximizes production efficiency, or minimizes delivery time while meeting constraints such as production needs, equipment capabilities, and personnel allocation.

#### 3.1 Deterministic algorithms

Deterministic algorithms in optimization algorithms refer to a type of algorithm that can provide a definite solution under a given input. These types of algorithms follow certain steps and rules to ensure that they ultimately obtain an optimal solution or a satisfactory solution. Here are some common deterministic optimization algorithms:

- 1) Linear Programming (LP): Suitable for scheduling problems with linear objective functions and linear constraints.
- 2) Integer programming (IP): suitable for scheduling problems with discrete variables.
- 3) Mixed integer programming (MIP) :combines the characteristics of linear programming and integer programming.

Deterministic algorithms ensure finding the global optimal solution of the objective function, but they have high computational complexity and are difficult to handle large-scale problems.

#### 3.2 Heuristic algorithms

Heuristic algorithms in optimization algorithms are a type of method that does not guarantee finding the global optimal solution, but usually can quickly find a satisfactory solution. This type of algorithm is based on experience and intuition, and quickly converges to a good solution through search strategies. Here are some common heuristic algorithms:

- 1) Genetic Algorithm (GA): Simulating the process of natural selection, searching for the optimal solution through operations such as crossover and mutation.
- 2) Simulated Annealing (SA): Simulating the process of metal annealing, jumping out of local optima by accepting local optimal solutions.
- 3) Tabu Search (TS): Using a taboo table to avoid the algorithm getting stuck in local optima.

These heuristic algorithms are usually suitable for complex problems, especially when the problem size is large and the objective function and constraint conditions are complex, they can provide effective solutions. However, due to the inability to guarantee a global optimal solution, it may be necessary to combine with other algorithms or adjust parameters in practical applications to improve the quality of the solution.

### 4. Application of Optimization Algorithm in Automatic Production Scheduling

The application of optimization algorithms in automatic production scheduling is mainly reflected in the following aspects:

- 1) Production plan formulation:
  - Optimization algorithms can help enterprises formulate production plans, including determining production sequence, production batch size, production time, etc.
  - By optimizing production plans, production cycles can be reduced, production efficiency can be improved, and inventory costs can be lowered.

2) Resource allocation:

- Optimization algorithms can allocate resources based on their availability and efficiency, such as machines, personnel, and raw materials.

- By allocating resources reasonably, resource utilization can be improved, and idle and waste can be reduced.

3) Delivery time forecast:

- Optimization algorithms can predict the delivery time of orders, taking into account the uncertainty and potential risks in production.

- This helps to improve customer satisfaction and reduce losses caused by delivery delays.

4) Inventory management:

- Optimization algorithms can help businesses optimize inventory levels and avoid excess or out of stock.

- By predicting demand, algorithms can adjust inventory strategies, reduce inventory costs, and improve inventory turnover.

5) Scheduling optimization:

- Optimization algorithms can optimize production scheduling and ensure the efficient operation of the production process.

- This includes the scheduling of machines and workers, as well as the allocation of production tasks.

6) Cost control:

Optimization algorithms can help enterprises control production costs and reduce energy consumption, material waste, etc. by optimizing production plans.

Specific application examples include:

1) Linear Programming (LP): Used for simple linear scheduling problems, such as determining the shortest path, minimizing transportation costs, etc.

2) Integer programming (IP): suitable for scheduling problems that require integer solutions, such as determining production batches, machine usage time, etc.

3) Mixed integer linear programming (MILP): A scheduling problem that combines continuous and discrete variables, such as product portfolio optimization.

4) Genetic Algorithm (GA): Suitable for complex multi-objective scheduling problems, it can find approximate optimal solutions.

5) Simulated Annealing (SA) algorithm: suitable for problems with multiple local optima, it can jump out of local optima and find better solutions.

6) Tabu Search (TS): Searching for the global optimal solution by avoiding repeated searches in the short term.

## 5. Optimization strategies and challenges

**Real time adjustment:** During the actual production process, market demand and resource conditions may change. Therefore, the automatic production scheduling system needs to have the ability to adjust in real-time to cope with unexpected situations and changing needs.

**Data Collection and Transmission:** In order to obtain real-time production data more accurately, the automatic scheduling system needs to use advanced data collection and transmission technology to ensure the accuracy and real-time nature of the data.

**Capacity planning:** Reasonable capacity planning is the key to ensuring the full utilization and coordination of production resources. The automatic production scheduling system needs to develop a reasonable production capacity planning plan based on market demand and resource conditions.

## 6. Conclusion

Optimization algorithms have broad application prospects in automatic production scheduling. By selecting and applying optimization algorithms reasonably, enterprises can improve production efficiency, reduce production costs, and thus gain advantages in a fiercely competitive market.

## References

- [1] Chen, A., Yang, G., & Wu, Z. (2008). production scheduling optimization algorithm for the hot rolling processes. *International Journal of production Research*, 46(7), 1955-1973. <https://doi.org/10.1080/00207540600988048>
- [2] Küster, T., Rayling, P., Wiersig, R., & Pardo, F. (2021). Multi-objective optimization of energy-efficient production schedules using genetic algorithms. *optimization and Engineering*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11081-021-09691-3>
- [3] Angelopoulos, S., López-Ortiz, A., & Hamel, A. (2016). optimal scheduling of contract algorithms with soft deadlines. *Journal of scheduling*, 20(3), 267-277. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10951-016-0483-z>
- [4] Wang, Y., Limmer, S., Olhofer, M., Emmerich, M., & Baeck, T. (2021). automatic preference based multi-objective evolutionary algorithm on vehicle fleet maintenance scheduling optimization.. <https://doi.org/10.48550/arxiv.2101.09556>
- [5] Qingxiang, L. (2023). Ineh-vns algorithm solved automatic production system scheduling problem under just-in-time environment. *Journal of Applied Mathematics*, 2023, 1-17. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2023/6680897>
- [6] Utari, C., Zarlis, M., & Sutarman, S. (2019). optimization of production scheduling and actual stock using fuzzy genetic algorithm. *Journal of Physics Conference Series*, 1235(1), 012035.

## Project source:

This article is one of the phased research results of the 2023 Shandong Province Education Development Research Micro Project “Experimental Teaching Research on Unmanned Aerial Vehicle Majors Based on ‘Online+Offline’ and ‘Virtual+Reality’” (Project ID: FJ012).

## Social Communication:

# Digital Technology Impact on Traditional Media

Yan Li

School of Philosophy and Sociology, Jilin University, Changchun100022, China

---

**Abstract:** With the rapid development of digital technology, a new social culture has emerged between new media and traditional media. Digital technologies are gradually being integrated into the media industry, significantly enhancing the dissemination efficiency of traditional media programs and providing strong support for the modernization of new media. In this context, media professionals need to deeply understand the impact of social communication on traditional media. This understanding is essential to explore new work models aimed at meeting audience needs, maximizing the advantages of social communication, injecting new vitality into the dissemination of broadcast and television programs, and promoting the sustained and healthy development of traditional media.

**Keywords:** New Media; Social Communication; Traditional Media; Broadcast and Television

---

## 1. Overview of Social Communication in New Media

Social communication in new media refers to user-centered interpersonal communication on new media platforms. This type of communication is conducted on the basis of specific relationships, and it can be vividly described as “honeycomb communication,” characterized by extremely high dissemination efficiency. Social communication is an essential form of contemporary information dissemination in media, centered on user-generated content such as text, images, short videos, and various updates. Utilizing diverse communication channels such as social media, short videos, and live streaming, it disseminates information in a one-to-many format, bringing together media users with similar interests and enabling rapid information spread and on-time interpersonal interaction. This new form of communication not only changes the traditional modes of information dissemination but also enriches the channels through which information is disseminated.

The core of social communication in new media is its social nature. Social media, as the primary carrier of social communication, enables rapid information diffusion and deep interaction through user behaviors such as following, liking, and commenting. This social nature transforms information dissemination from a unidirectional flow to a multi-directional interactive exchange, effectively enhancing the dissemination effect. Social communication in new media is notably real-time. Leveraging new media platforms, information can be updated and transmitted instantly, whether it is breaking news or daily updates, reaching audiences worldwide through social media channels. This real-time aspect not only significantly increases the speed of information dissemination but also endows the information with interactivity. Additionally, social communication in new media is highly personalized. New media platforms can recommend customized information content to users based on their interests through big data.

## 2. The Impact of Social Communication on Traditional Media

Recent years, the rapid development of web technology has given rise to various new media forms, enabling users and audiences to receive diverse information in real-time. Social communication in new media has significantly enhanced the speed, breadth, and depth of information dissemination. This shift has facilitated news dissemination beyond the constraints of geography and time, allowing people to access the latest news anytime and anywhere.

However, social communication in new media has also posed significant challenges to the development of traditional media such as broadcast and television. On one hand, the rise of new media has led to a gradual decline of audience, particularly among younger audiences who prefer obtaining news through new media platforms. On the other hand, the social nature of new media communication has diversified news dissemination methods, making it increasingly difficult for traditional media programs to meet users’ demands in terms of content and format. Specifically, the impact of social communication in new media on broadcast and television is reflected in three aspects:

## **2.1. Impact on News Topic Selection**

In the context of social communication in new media, the selection of news topics for traditional media programs has been significantly changed, becoming more diversified and immediate. Traditional broadcast programs typically have their topic selection constrained by factors such as program duration and broadcast schedule. However, social communication in new media has broken these limitations, with trending topics and public opinion hotspots on social media becoming important sources for television news topics. Audiences actively participate in discussions on social media platforms, generating socially influential trending topics. Traditional broadcast news programs need to closely monitor these social media dynamics and promptly capture social hotspots to better meet the audience's demand for diversified and timely news.

## **2.2. Impact on News Editing**

In the new media era, news sources have become diverse, traditional media editors requiring to extract valuable content through vast amounts of information and then reorganize and edit it to present richer news content. From the perspective of news editing workflows, the work of news editors has primarily followed a linear approach. However, under the trend of digital dissemination, this linear editing method often requires considerable time to find materials, making it challenging to meet the demands of timely dissemination. With social communication in new media, news editors now use non-linear methods and multimedia technologies in their editing processes. This not only highlights the advantages of new media but also enables real-time online search for materials, effectively ensuring the quality of broadcast programs.

## **2.3. Impact on News Presentation**

In the environment of social communication in new media, the mode of news presentation has also undergone significant changes. News content has become richer, and the integration process of news has become more streamlined. On new media platforms, a plethora of news information continuously emerges, making it challenging for the audience to fully comprehend and grasp all the information. Broadcast television news programs need to leverage new media platforms to integrate news information from different sources, presenting more comprehensive and in-depth news content. This integration method not only enriches the forms of news presentation, making the news more intuitive and vivid, but also improves the efficiency of news dissemination, enabling audiences to access more information in a shorter time.

## **3. Optimization Strategies for Traditional Media in the Context of Social Communication**

The integration of digital technologies at present provides robust momentum for the modernization of new media. As a crucial channel for dissemination of social information, news broadcasting holds significant importance in maintaining social stability and fostering societal development. A thorough investigation into the impact of social communication in new media on traditional media such as broadcast and television can assist these entities in better adapting to market changes, meeting audience demands, and enhancing their competitive edge in the new media era.

### **3.1. Change Work Philosophy, Achieving Integration of Diverse Media**

In the context of social communication in new media, traditional media programs need to keep pace with the times. Through innovative work philosophies, they should actively engage with new media, to achieve the integration of diverse media. This approach breaks away from traditional media program production methods and dissemination modes, introducing digital communication thinking to meet the increasingly diversified information demands of audiences. Specifically, traditional media programs should leverage the immediacy and convenience of social media platforms to effectively gather news leads and inspire topic ideas. Journalists need sharp insights and the ability to capture and filter information within the new media environment. By utilizing new technologies, traditional media programs break through traditional visual limitations, providing audiences with an immersive program experience. Regarding dissemination channels, traditional broadcast programs should fully exploit the advantages of new media platforms, continuously expanding their dissemination channels. Apart from broadcast and television, programs can be repurposed and disseminated in the form of short videos and live broadcasts on new media platforms,

effectively increasing program coverage and impact, attracting more young audiences, and further enhancing program competitiveness in the market.

### **3.2. Launching Timely News Topics to Promote Social Communication of News**

In the context of social communication in new media, traditional media programs need to place greater emphasis on timeliness and social engagement to attract more audience attention and participation. By closely monitoring social media dynamics, enhancing audience interaction, and utilizing big data analysis tools, traditional programs can more accurately grasp news hotspots and audience demands, providing audiences with more valuable program content.

Firstly, news programs should monitor social media dynamics in real-time, promptly capture social hotspots and trending topics, and quickly conduct news interviews and reports to launch timely and content-rich news programs. To introduce timely news topics, media programs can establish close connections with social media platforms, continuously track popular discussions and trends.

Secondly, traditional broadcast programs need to enhance interaction with the audience to promote the social media dissemination of programs. Traditional media programs can establish dedicated social media interaction sections, encouraging audiences to participate in discussions of program topics through comments, shares, likes, and other means. Through participation and feedback, programs can more accurately meet audience demands and interests, continuously optimizing program content and presentation formats.

### **3.3. Optimizing TV News Production Processes to Enhance Efficiency**

In the era of new media, traditional media programs should optimize their production processes continually, aiming to meet the audience's high demands for news timeliness. Traditional media can promote ongoing innovation and improvement in traditional media programs through the introduction of new equipment, strengthening team collaboration, and enhancing efficiency, thereby providing audiences with higher-quality news content.

Firstly, actively introducing new equipment effectively enhances program production efficiency. Using new technologies like cloud computing and big data enables rapid processing and storage of programs, thereby enhancing production efficiency. Secondly, internal communication and cooperation within the media need to be strengthened to establish efficient working mechanisms. Production teams should clarify responsibilities and tasks to ensure seamless and coordinated operations at every production stage. Effective communication channels and feedback mechanisms should be established within the team to promptly identify and resolve issues. Thirdly, controlling production costs and continually optimizing production processes to create "small yet excellent" programs are essential. Traditional programs need to manage costs effectively, enhance production efficiency, and equip production personnel with multimedia editing and broadcasting capabilities to reduce production costs effectively. Lastly, traditional broadcast programs should strengthen cooperation and communication with other medias. Sharing resources and collaborating with other media facilitate program expansion, dissemination, and coverage, enhancing program visibility and capturing a broader market audience.

### **3.4. Enhancing the Interactivity of Traditional Media Programs and Increasing Audience Engagement**

In the context of social communication, enhancing the interactivity of traditional media programs towards socialization is an inevitable trend for their development. In television broadcasting, by introducing forms of interaction such as social media and live streaming, the audience interaction is strengthened, allowing users to participate in the production and dissemination of programs, narrowing the gap between programs and audiences, and meeting the diverse needs of more viewers. At the same time, traditional media programs should also focus on collecting and analyzing feedback of audiences, promptly adjusting program content and formats to meet audience demands and achieve sustainable development.

Firstly, traditional media programs join in social media platforms to achieve real-time interaction with audiences. During program broadcasts, traditional media programs can invite audiences to participate in topic discussions through social media platforms and share their views.



Secondly, traditional media programs can also utilize live streaming technology to achieve real-time interaction with audiences. Live streaming is an emerging form of media interaction characterized by immediacy and strong interactivity. Television programs enable audiences to participate in real-time reporting or live streams, experiencing the atmosphere and authenticity of the scene. During live broadcasts, programs can invite viewers to express their views through bullet screens, comments, and other methods, interacting with hosts in real-time. This interactive approach deepens audience engagement with the program itself, enhancing its attractiveness and influence.

Lastly, broadcast and television programs need to strengthen the collection and analysis of feedback information. By collecting audience feedback, staff can promptly understand audience preferences, providing strong support for program improvement and innovation. Furthermore, media can analyze audience viewing interests, and other information based on feedback data, enabling the development of more precise media communication strategies.

#### **4. Conclusion**

In conclusion, in the context of new media development, traditional media are experiencing a declining trend of audience and users, necessitating proactive innovation in production concepts among traditional program makers and timely adaptation of information presentation methods. The socialized dissemination of new media has profoundly impacted the selection of topics, editing work, and news presentation in broadcast programs, significantly challenging some traditional broadcast media, which must actively adjust and optimize themselves. Therefore, traditional broadcast media should seize the opportunity to innovate program production concepts, achieve organic integration across multiple media; introduce timely news topics to promote the socialized dissemination of programs; optimize broadcast program production processes to enhance efficiency; strengthen the interactive features of traditional programs and increase audience engagement, continually improving the dissemination efficiency of traditional broadcast programs, expanding dissemination channels, enhancing influence and reach, and attracting more attention to traditional broadcast programs. Finding the right media positioning in the new media era to achieve sustained and robust development.

#### **References**

- [1]Talwar S, Dhir A, Singh D, et al. Sharing of fake news on social media: Application of the honeycomb framework and the third-person effect hypothesis[J]. *Journal of Retailing and Consumer Services*, 2020, 57: 102197.
- [2]Meikle G. *Social media: Communication, sharing and visibility*[M]. Routledge, 2016.
- [3]Tong J. A study on the effect of web live broadcast on consumers' willingness to purchase[J]. *Open Journal of Business and Management*, 2017, 5(02): 280.

#### **Author Bio:**

Yan Li, 1990 July, female, the Han nationality, Research Fields: Aging, Digital Technology, Network society

# An Analysis of Grammar in Chinese Students' Narrative Writings in English Class from the Perspective of SFL

Jiajing Pu

Suzhou Global Institute, Suzhou 215163, China

---

**Abstract:** Writing is a significant part of English teaching and learning, so it is worth analyzing and discussing. For middle school students in China, English writing takes up a noticeable proportion of 12.5 percent in the entrance examination for high schools, and it is indispensable in English learning. Moreover, it can effectively promote the internalization of students' English knowledge and help test learners' use of syntactic structure and words. Therefore, writing is as important as listening, speaking, and reading. However, writing is considered to be an obstacle to English education in China, and it seems to be overlooked in middle school English teaching compared to other major English skills. Chinese students' actual writing ability falls far short of the requirements and standards.

The purpose of the study is to identify grammar issues in Chinese middle school students' English compositions from the perspective of Systematic Functional Linguistic. The study also aims to explore the process in which the teacher teaches writing and then provide some suggestions to help middle school teachers know how to model writing teaching and teach grammar so as to help students improve their writing abilities.

**Keywords:** Grammar; English Writing; Chinese students; Systematic Functional Linguistic

---

## 1. Introduction

Grammar plays an important role in writing, so grammar teaching is an essential aspect of the English curriculum in Chinese middle schools. However, it is still based on traditional grammar and tends to focus on sentence rules and patterns. Differing from a series of rules and patterns to memorize and follow, Systematic Functional Linguistic is a theory of language which is different from others, mainly in text and grammar. It suggests that language is a series of choices influenced by the cultural and situational contexts, purposes, and audience (Halliday, 2004). A functional approach focuses on how language enables us to share information, express ideas, argue, reflect, construct ideas, provide our experiences, and make sense of the world. It looks at how people use real language for real purposes. The selection of lexical and grammatical use in texts is to make meanings.

SFL contains three metafunctions, interpersonal metafunctions, experiential metafunctions, and textual metafunctions. For interpersonal metafunctions, there are two main grammatical features, the subject and the finite, which form the mood of the clause, declarative, interrogative, or imperative. The mood could show readers the relationship between two persons or between the person and the object. Experiential metafunctions focus on analyzing and discussing the actions which are expressed in the main verb. It pays much attention to different types of processes in the text, including material, mental, relational, verbal, behavioral, and existential (Thompson, 2014). There are three ways that textual meanings are constructed in a text: repetition, conjunction, and thematization. It is used to examine whether readers could make meaning of the text by reading the words and sentences used in the text.

Since the genre of students' writing is narrative, and it also concerns how languages serve as resources for making meaning. Therefore, I would like to use SFL as a tool and guidance to analyze learners' writing samples. What's more, I will use the three metafunctions as guidance to analyze the grammar selection and use in their writings.

## 2. Methodology

### 2.1 Research Questions

In this paper, my research questions are:

- 1) How does the teacher teach writing to Chinese students in English class?

- 2) What kinds of grammar problems do Chinese students have in their writings, and why are they important based on SFL?

## 2.2 Research Subjects

The subjects of this research are 40 first-year middle school students from Class 3 in Suzhou Pingjiang Middle School. All the students are the same in the following aspects:

- 1) All of them have received complete primary school education, and this is their first year in Suzhou Pingjiang Middle School.
- 2) The students in the class are taught by the same English teacher and have received the same education from their teacher.

## 2.3 Research Instruments

Two instruments were taken in this research: 1) samples of one topic-based narrative composition and 2) An interview.

## 2.4 Composition

On December 1st, 2020, all the students in Class 3 were asked to write a composition entitled “My Dream Christmas Day” with about 80 to 100 words in class. They were expected to write it within 30 minutes. Their English teacher supervised the whole writing process, which ensured that all the samples could reflect the students’ actual and spontaneous language use and language ability.

All the students handed in their compositions on time, and the teacher corrected their writings on time. After that, I selected 25 compositions randomly for further analysis and research.

## 2.5 Interview

I did an online interview with the English teacher of Class 3, Grade 7 after she finished correcting the students’ compositions, and the interview lasted about 20 minutes. The interview was divided into two parts. First, the teacher was asked to talk about how she taught writing to learners. Second, she was asked how she provided guidance to students in their writing process.

## 2.6 Data Collection

In this research, the reason why I chose writing texts is that compared with other language skills, writing is the most comprehensive task, which can reflect students’ target language ability. It can provide useful information not only for language learning but also for language teaching. Data were collected in this study through the following steps:

Step 1: To collect and number the samples

After being finished by all the students in class within the given time and evaluated by the English teacher, their compositions were collected and numbered. 25 compositions are chosen at random by me for further analysis.

Step 2: To select out grammar errors

After selecting 25 compositions in the class, I read the compositions carefully to check them for grammar errors the students had made. For the purpose of the study, grammar errors were marked. Then I read the compositions again to double check for errors.

Step 3: To confirm the errors for further study

In order to make the identification of errors more objective, I invited the English teacher to check the compositions carefully again with me. The agreed errors were then counted and recorded for further analysis and discussion in this study.

## 3. Data Analysis

### 3.1 Students’ General Performance in Writing

The compositions of all the students in Class 3 were scored by their English teacher before being collected and analyzed.

Table 1 The Students’ Scores in the Writing Exercise

Scores	Numbers of students
0-5 (weak)	4

6-7 (limited)	26
8-9 (fair)	8
10 (good)	2

As can be seen from Table 1, the distribution of students in each scored segment is: 4 people on a scale of 0 to 5, 26 people on a scale of 6 to 7, 8 people on a scale of 8 to 9, and 2 people on a scale of 10.

Table 2 Writing Score Index

Class	Number	Total Score	Average Score	Pass Rate	Excellent Rate	Highest Score	Lowest Score
Class3 Grade7	40	10	6.6	90%	5%	10	5

As can be seen from Table 2, the average score of the writing is 6.6 points, the highest score is 10 points, the lowest score is 5 points, 90.0% of the students have passed, but the excellence rate is low, only 5%.

## 4. Findings

### 4.1 Interview

From the interview, we could know that:

1) The teacher separated language teaching and literacy teaching. She said that before assigning the writing task, she provided clear vocabulary and grammar guidance, instructing students to use the words related to the topic and the proper grammar in their writings. She also provided example sentences to show learners how to logically complete the composition. However, when students were writing, she did not participate and gave any instructions.

2) The teacher didn't guide learners to scaffold the writing process like brainstorming, drafting, revising, and editing. Learners finished their writings by themselves without these steps.

### 4.2 Students' Grammar Problems in Writings

In the following parts, I will analyze some grammar problems existing in the writings of the selected students based on SFL.

#### 4.2.1 Incomplete Sentence Elements

When writing English sentences, the students always miss a certain element of the sentences.

First is the absence of the subject. For example, one student wrote: Decorate the Christmas tree makes me feel very excited. When the phrase is used as the subject, it should be the gerund phrase. Otherwise, there is a lack of subject in the sentence, and there are two verbs. Therefore, we should correct the sentence into: Decorating the Christmas tree makes me feel very excited.

The second is the absence of the complete verb form. It just uses a part of a sentence as a complete sentence. For example, the student used "He a Christmas present" as a complete sentence. It is obvious that he missed the verb. We should follow the rule of the sentence, and we can't miss the subject and the verb, so the sentence should be: He sees a Christmas present.

The third is the absence of conjunctions. Conjunctions' function is to connect the elements and contents of a sentence. Many students still miss it in their writings. For example, a student wrote: I am so happy, I can't wait to tell my mom this thing. In the sentence, we need a conjunction to connect the two parts, so we should put the word "and" between the two parts.

The missing and misuse of sentence elements such as noun, verb, preposition, and conjunction belong to the mistakes of experiential metafunctions. Learners didn't understand the six types of processes properly. Using the examples above: the absence of the subject, verb, and conjunction, they didn't write the existential process, verbal process, and relational process correctly in the sentence.

What's more, they're also mistakes of textual metafunctions. Textual metafunctions are related to what roles the language plays to make coherent discourse. Here, the theme is incomplete because there's no subject in the sentence. It will make readers hard to know what the writer is going to express and then make meanings.

#### 4.2.2 Word Order Confusion

Words in English and Chinese sentences are generally arranged in a certain order. Sometimes English word order is different from

Chinese word order, so it is easy to make the mistake of word order. The Chinese word order is more fixed, while in English, the word order depends on the type of predicate verb. Adverbials that indicate manner and degree are usually placed after verbs: adverbials that indicate frequency, such as “always”, “often”, etc., are usually placed in front of verbs, followed by verbs, modal verbs, and auxiliary verbs. Chinese students often make mistakes in English syntax by mechanically applying Chinese habits. For example, one student wrote: I very much like going to the shopping mall with my parents. However, such expression is wrong in English. We should put “very much” at the end of the sentence, so it should be: I like going to the shopping mall with my parents very much. Another student wrote: we all are very happy. In the sentence, “all” should be put after “are”. The right sentence should be: We are all very happy.

The problem belongs to the mistakes of interpersonal metafunctions. These sentences show the use of declarative mood. The relationship between the author and the readers is that the author as the information provider, and the readers as the information receiver. The author provides information about when and where the action takes place, who the doer is, what the doer does, and how the doer feels. However, the wrong word order here might be potential to make readers find that it is hard to understand the text and hard to get the information. They couldn't make meanings from the text and know the purpose of the text.

#### 4.2.3 Tense Errors

There are still some tense errors in the students' writings. In English, when the tense changes, the predicate verbs will change. Therefore, there are some mistakes.

First is the misuse of the tense. For example, the sentence: They start to prepare the food two days ago. This sentence should be used in the past tense because “two days ago” exist in the end, but it is used in the present tense. The right one should be: They started to prepare the food two days ago.

The second is the inconsistency of the tense. Take the example of one sentence: She bought some fruit and takes these things home. The first half of the sentence is used in the past tense, while the second half is used in the present tense. We need to make the sentences consistent, so we should change “bring” into “brought”.

The problems are also the errors of interpersonal metafunctions. These sentences still show the use of declarative mood. The author should provide information about when the actions take place. However, the tense errors make readers not know the clear time of the action, past, now, or future. It is hard for readers to understand the text and then make meanings of the text.

## 5. Conclusion

From the perspective of SFL, grammar is not just learned to know the fixed rules and structures of sentences. It is used to make meanings based on the selection of words and grammar. In the analysis of students' writings, we could see that their narrative writing has a lot of grammar errors. They belong to the mistakes of interpersonal metafunctions, experiential metafunctions, and textual metafunctions. Here I'd like to give some implementations for teachers and learners in the future teaching and learning process.

For teachers, first, grammar shouldn't be taught as a separate subject. Instead, grammar teaching can be infused into the writing process. The selection of words in the sentences ought to be considered in various contexts for different purposes. Texts not only work to position their readers. They are also positioned by writers' own perspectives. Therefore, when students use language, teachers need to help learners select the most appropriate lexical and grammatical options to clearly express their opinions. These selections are designed to convey specific meanings and have particular influence.

Second, the process of writing – brainstorming, drafting, reviewing and editing is quite important for a good writing. Teachers ought to guide learners to know the process of writing and how to write.

What's more, teachers could use “scaffolding” to guide learners in developing their knowledge and skills. For different genres of writing such as poetry, narratives, expositive, and persuasive writings, teacher could first scaffold for learners how to make simple sentences and then guide them to add details to polish their writings.

For learners, they need to know that in writings, the selection and use of grammar is for specific purposes and for making meaning. They can't just copy the fixed sentence patterns. Instead, they ought to make proper selections to accomplish their own writings.

## References

[1]Locke, T. (2010).Beyond the grammar wars a resource for teachers and students on developing language knowledge in the English/literacy classroom. London: Routledge.

[2]Halliday, M.A.K., and Christian M. I. M. Matthiessen. An Introduction to Functional Grammar. Arnold, 2004.

[3]Thompson, Geoff. Introducing Functional Grammar. Routledge, 2014.

## Author:

Jiajing Pu (1997.08), female, Suzhou, Jiangsu Province,China.

## Position:

English teacher Title: Teaching Assistant Education Background: Master Institution: Suzhou Global Institute Research Interests: Pedagogy, Linguistics, Teaching Reform

# Research on trajectory optimization of control robot

Jun Wang, Weijuan Li, Rui Guo, Tong Wang, Huatao Zhang

Shandong Vocational College of Information Technology, Weifang 261041, China

---

**Abstract:** With the rapid development of robot technology, trajectory optimization has become an important research direction in the field of robot control. The aim of trajectory optimization is to find an optimal path that meets certain constraints to achieve efficient, safe and accurate robot movement. This paper first introduces the importance of trajectory optimization and its basic concepts, and then elaborates the main methods and technologies of trajectory optimization, including interpolation, search algorithm, optimization algorithm based on mathematical model, intelligent optimization algorithm and real-time trajectory optimization. Then, through the concrete case analysis and experimental verification, the effects and challenges of trajectory optimization in practical application are discussed. Finally, the practical application of trajectory optimization in robot control is demonstrated through case analysis, the research status and development trend of trajectory optimization are summarized, and the future research direction is prospected.

**Keywords:** Trajectory Optimization; Interpolation; Search Algorithm; Mathematical Model; Intelligent Optimization Algorithm

---

## 1. Introduction

Robot trajectory optimization is one of the important research directions in the field of robot control, which is of great significance for improving robot motion efficiency, reducing energy consumption and ensuring motion safety. With the continuous expansion and complexity of robot application scenarios, the importance of trajectory optimization technology is becoming increasingly prominent. In industrial automation, logistics and transportation, medical rehabilitation and other fields, robots need to carry out accurate and efficient trajectory planning and control. Therefore, trajectory optimization technology has become an important support for the development of robot technology.<sup>[1]</sup>

## 2. The basic concept and importance of trajectory optimization

### 2.1. Basic concept of trajectory optimization

Trajectory optimization refers to finding an optimal path that satisfies certain constraints through optimization algorithm in the case of given robot movement space and target position. Among them, the constraint conditions include the robot's dynamic characteristics, environmental obstacles, task requirements, etc. The goal of trajectory optimization is to make the robot have higher efficiency, lower energy consumption and better safety during movement.

Trajectory optimization usually involves the following key steps:

- ① Modeling: Establish the kinematics model and dynamics model of the robot to describe the motion law of the robot in three-dimensional space.<sup>[2]</sup>
- ② Set goals: according to the task requirements, set optimization goals, such as the shortest path, minimum energy consumption, highest efficiency, etc.
- ③ Constraint conditions: considering environmental obstacles, robot kinematics and dynamics constraints and other factors, set the constraints of the optimization problem.

### 2.2. Trajectory optimization has extremely important significance in the field of robot control, mainly reflected in the following aspects:

① Improve motion efficiency: By optimizing the motion trajectory of the robot, unnecessary paths and redundant actions can be reduced, thus improve the motion efficiency of the robot. In the fields of industrial automation, logistics and transportation, trajectory optimization can significantly improve production efficiency and reduce operating costs.

② Reduce energy consumption: The optimized trajectory can make the robot more energy efficient and reduce energy consumption



during movement. This is especially important for robots that need to work continuously for a long time, which can effectively reduce maintenance costs and extend service life. The optimized trajectory can avoid obstacles and dangerous areas to ensure the safety of the robot during movement. In fields such as driverless cars and medical rehabilitation, trajectory optimization can significantly improve the safety and reliability of the system.

### **3. The main methods and technologies of trajectory optimization**

#### **3.1. Interpolation method**

Interpolation method is a simple and intuitive trajectory optimization method, its basic idea is to obtain a smooth trajectory through interpolation operation when the starting point and end point are known. The characteristic of this algorithm is that it can complete the movement of elements while finding the insertion position. Because the movement of the element must be from back to front, the two operations can be combined to improve the efficiency of the algorithm. The performance of the insertion method depends on the choice of the initial path and the insertion strategy. Different initial paths and insertion strategies may lead to different optimization results. Interpolation is suitable for low speed, low precision control applications.

#### **3.2. Search algorithms**

Search algorithm is a trajectory optimization method based on heuristic search, is the key component of trajectory optimization, they are based on a certain search strategy and rules, in the solution space to find the trajectory that satisfies the specific objective function and constraints. Search algorithms usually have an explicit objective function for evaluating the quality of the solution.<sup>[3]</sup> The search algorithm gradually approximates the optimal solution through iterative steps. In each iteration, the algorithm updates the state of the solution based on the state of the current solution and the search strategy. The search algorithm can adapt to different application scenarios and constraints.

#### **3.3. Optimization algorithm based on mathematical model**

The optimization algorithm based on mathematical model is the traditional method of trajectory optimization. It converts the trajectory optimization problem into a mathematical optimization problem by establishing the kinematics model and the dynamics model of the robot, and then uses the mathematical optimization algorithm to solve the optimal trajectory. Common mathematical optimization algorithms include gradient descent method, Newton method, conjugate gradient method and soon. This kind of method has high accuracy and stability, but the calculation amount is large, and the ability to deal with complex environment and constraints is limited.

#### **3.4. Intelligent optimization algorithm**

Intelligent optimization algorithm is a research hotspot in the field of trajectory optimization in recent years. It uses artificial intelligence and machine learning technology to realize trajectory optimization by simulating evolution, learning and other processes in nature.<sup>[4]</sup> Common intelligent optimization algorithms include genetic algorithm, particle swarm algorithm, ant colony algorithm, etc. This kind of algorithm has strong global search ability and robustness, and is suitable for trajectory optimization problems under complex environment and constraints.

#### **3.5. Real-time trajectory optimization**

Real-time trajectory optimization refers to real-time trajectory optimization in the process of robot movement. It needs to constantly adjust and optimize the trajectory according to the real-time status and environmental changes of the robot. Real-time trajectory optimization is of great significance to improve the autonomy and adaptability of the robot. Common methods of real-time trajectory optimization include model predictive control, reinforcement learning, etc. This method can respond to the environment change in real time and realize the autonomous optimization and control of the robot.<sup>[5]</sup>

## 4. The research status and development trend of trajectory optimization

### 4.1. Research status

At present, the trajectory optimization technology has made remarkable progress. In terms of algorithms, a variety of efficient trajectory optimization algorithms have emerged, such as genetic algorithm, ant colony algorithm, simulated annealing algorithm and soon. In terms of application, trajectory optimization technology has been widely used in driverless cars, industrial automation, aerospace and other fields.

### 4.2. Development trend

In the future, trajectory optimization technology will show the following development trends:

① Application of deep learning in trajectory optimization: With the continuous development of deep learning technology, its application to trajectory optimization will become a research hotspot.

② Multi-robot collaborative trajectory optimization: With the wide application of multi-robot system, how to realize the collaborative trajectory optimization among multi-robots will become the focus of research. Through collaborative trajectory optimization technology, multi-robots can cooperate efficiently and accomplish tasks cooperatively.

## 5. The practical application of trajectory optimization in robot control

Trajectory optimization technology has a wide range of application prospects in the field of robot control. The following are some practical application cases:

① Driverless car: In the path planning of a driverless car, trajectory optimization technology can help the car avoid obstacles, reduce energy consumption and improve driving efficiency.

② Industrial automation: on the industrial automation production line, trajectory optimization technology can realize the rapid and accurate grasp and placement of the workpiece by the robot, and improve production efficiency. [6]

③ Medical rehabilitation: In the field of medical rehabilitation, trajectory optimization technology can help robots achieve accurate and smooth motion trajectories, and provide patients with safer and more comfortable rehabilitation services.

## 6. Conclusion

This paper introduces the basic concept, importance, main methods and techniques of trajectory optimization. The practical application of trajectory optimization in robot control is demonstrated through case analysis. In the future, with the continuous development of robot technology and the continuous expansion of application fields, trajectory optimization technology will face more challenges and opportunities. Future research will focus on improving the real-time and adaptive performance of trajectory optimization algorithms to meet the needs of more complex and diversified application scenarios.

## References

- [1] Kober, J., Bagnell, J. A., & Peters, J. (2013). Reinforcement learning in robotics: A survey. *The International Journal of Robotics Research*, 32(11), 1238-1274.
- [2] Wang, L., & Li, J. (2020). An improved particle swarm optimization algorithm for robot trajectory planning with multiple objectives. *Robotics and Autonomous Systems*, 126, 103455.
- [3] Betts, J. T. (2010). *Practical methods for optimal control and estimation using nonlinear programming*. SIAM.
- [4] Betts, J. T. (1998). Survey of numerical methods for trajectory optimization. *Journal of Guidance, Control, and Dynamics*, 21(2), 193-207.
- [5] Li, Z., & Wang, B. (2018). Trajectory optimization and control of Delta robots. *Robotics and Computer-Integrated Manufacturing*, 24(6), 1250-1262.
- [6] Van den Berg, J., Patil, S., & Alterovitz, R. (2012). Motion planning under uncertainty using iterative local optimization in belief space. *The International Journal of Robotics Research*, 31(11-12), 1368-1382.

**Project source:**

This article is one of the phased research results of the 2023 Shandong Province Education Development Research Micro Project “Experimental Teaching Research on Unmanned Aerial Vehicle Majors Based on ‘Online+Offline’ and ‘Virtual+Reality’” (Project ID: FJ012).

# Research on the Optimization Path of Public Participation in Grassroots Social Safety Governance — Taking Hangzhou’s “Million Volunteers Police” as an Example

JiaLing Wang

China Jiliang University, Hangzhou 310000, China

---

**Abstract:** Strengthening public participation in grassroots social safety governance is an important means to improve the social governance system and enhance the capability of social governance. To further optimize the path of public participation in grassroots social safety governance, this paper takes the current situation of public participation in Hangzhou’s “Million Volunteers Police” as a starting point, identifies the restrictive issues such as the incomplete main body factors, insufficient cultural factors, imperfect system factors, inappropriate resource allocation factors, and not in-depth strategic factors, and puts forward countermeasures and suggestions for training governance subjects, constructing governance systems, and deeply cultivating governance culture, in order to improve the efficiency of public participation in grassroots social safety governance.

**Keywords:** Public Participation; Social Safety Governance; Optimization Path

---

Public participation refers to the totality of actions by social organizations and the public themselves, excluding the government, in influencing decisions and laws through various means and methods in the government decision-making and legislative process. At present, the level of public participation in China is divided into three levels: The first level is at the decision-making and legislative level, mainly reflected in the participation in legislative hearings at the municipal and above levels of the People’s Congress organs. The second level is at the administrative level, conducting centralized discussions and consultations. The third level is in grassroots governance, represented by grassroots autonomy and rural autonomy.

Volunteer police generally take on the role of maintaining social order and security in public places such as grassroots communities (villages), schools, property communities, and factory enterprises in a voluntary and unpaid form. Under the leadership of local public security organs, they provide necessary assistance work according to the needs of the jurisdiction’s security management, including protecting the lives and property of citizens, maintaining social order, conducting legal knowledge propaganda, assisting public security organs in handling some routine affairs, conducting conflict dispute investigation and resolution work, and promptly reporting illegal and criminal activities to public security organs, which helps to improve the work efficiency of the police.

In the current social security prevention and control practice of public participation, the mechanism of public participation is either missing or imperfect, resulting in the current situation of low efficiency of public participation in grassroots social safety governance in China. This paper takes the current situation of public participation in Hangzhou’s “Million Volunteers Police” as a starting point, based on in-depth interviews and data analysis of questionnaire surveys, and concludes that the current grassroots social safety governance model of Hangzhou’s “Million Volunteers Police” has problems such as incomplete main body factors, insufficient cultural factors, imperfect system factors, inappropriate resource allocation factors, and not in-depth strategic factors. In order to further improve the mechanism of Hangzhou’s “Million Volunteers Police” participating in grassroots social safety governance and enhance the efficiency of public participation, the following measures for improvement are proposed:

## 1. Cultivate Governance Subjects

### 1.1 Expand the scope of participating subjects.

The “Million Volunteers Police” in Hangzhou can introduce more experts and professionals from various fields, such as law, psychological counseling, emergency rescue, etc., to improve the professional level of the “Million Volunteers Police” team. Strengthen cooperation

with universities and research institutions to attract more talents and scholars to participate in community safety construction, inject new vitality into the “Million Volunteers Police” model, and encourage enterprises and merchants to join, forming a diversified and socialized participation pattern.

### **1.2 Improve the Quality of Participating Subjects.**

Through enhanced training and education, improve the professional literacy and comprehensive ability of the participating subjects of Hangzhou’s “Million Volunteers Police”. The training content can include laws and regulations, safety prevention knowledge, emergency handling skills, etc., strengthen the linkage and collaboration with health, fire, emergency and other departments, and jointly carry out practical exercises and training activities to enhance the practical ability of participating subjects.

### **1.3 Optimize the Participation Mechanism.**

Establish and improve the participation mechanism, clarify the responsibilities and rights of the participating subjects of Hangzhou’s “Million Volunteers Police”, ensure that they can play their roles effectively, and encourage participating subjects to carry out independent innovation and exploration practice, forming a unique volunteer police work model.

## **2. Construct Governance Systems**

2.1 Further establish a relationship of equal dialogue among multiple subjects. Effective dialogue between governance subjects and objects helps to prevent highly organized interest groups from being shaped into long-term representatives and holding the right to speak in negotiations, allowing the dispersed interests of the grassroots masses and mobile populations to be included in the negotiation agenda. In the practice of negotiation, it is specifically manifested in various forms such as negotiation proposals, meetings, discussions, and demonstrations. The richness and flexibility of the negotiation methods can expand the choice space of the negotiation subjects, and the matching of the negotiation methods with the types of issues also affects the efficiency and process of the negotiation.

### **2.2 Continuously expand the ways of public participation.**

Innovate the government’s governance methods and strive to build platforms for public participation. By constructing a diversified negotiation mechanism and institutionalized participation mechanism, it can effectively reverse the current situation of single participation methods and scarce channels of Hangzhou’s “Million Volunteers Police” in grassroots social safety governance, and help the volunteer police to participate more widely and deeply in grassroots social governance. Firstly, strengthen the construction of grassroots social organizations, relying on grassroots multi-level, multi-angle, and personalized attention to the needs of the public, and cultivate and develop various social organizations with service, public welfare, and mutual aid as the core. Enable the social public to better integrate into fields such as social governance, service innovation, and livelihood security. Secondly, innovate the way of cooperation, absorb social support institutions and enterprises, through institutionalized methods such as joint meetings, public opinion discussions, and mutual consultations, while the leaders of the party branches of the organs serve as part-time members of the grassroots party organizations, and implement point-to-point pairing, widely listen to public opinion, gather the wisdom of the masses, from discovering problems, rapid response, classification and summary, to form a closed loop for solving problems, comprehensively solve public needs, and achieve a synergistic governance model of complementary advantages and resource sharing.

## **3. Deeply Cultivate Governance Culture**

### **3.1 Pay attention to the consolidation of citizens’ participation awareness.**

At present, the proportion of high school and college education in the volunteer police team participating in grassroots social governance in Hangzhou is relatively large, and the age is relatively old, so it is necessary to strengthen the guidance and consolidation of the volunteer police’s participation in grassroots social governance. Vigorously strengthen public education and publicity efforts, give full play to the guiding role of newspapers, WeChat, Weibo, and TikTok, etc., actively create an atmosphere of “the people’s city is built by the people, and

the people's city is for the people" in the whole society, cultivate the sense of ownership of the volunteer police in participating in grassroots social safety governance, and improve the ability of the volunteer police to actively participate. At the same time, publicize the advanced deeds and typical experiences of the participating subjects, set examples and benchmarks, motivate more people to join the "Million Volunteers Police" team, strengthen cooperation with the media, and expand the social influence of the "Million Volunteers Police" team through news reports, special reports, and other means.

### **3.2 Carry out multi-dimensional volunteer police capacity training.**

Establish a platform for exchange and learning, providing volunteer police with learning channels for knowledge about participating in grassroots social governance in Hangzhou, such as content, form, procedures, and rules, to improve the degree and ability of volunteer police participation. Carry out backbone instructor training, relying on the current command structure of the volunteer police team, the grassroots public security bureau should be responsible for the regular training by the backbone instructor team, especially for skills such as anti-fraud propaganda, anti-theft and fraud propaganda, and safety prevention and control. After the backbone instructors complete the training, according to the construction of the volunteer police team in the jurisdiction, relying on the backbone instructor team, through organizing collective teaching, sending education to the door, pre-job training, online self-study and other methods, to carry out pre-job training for all volunteer police teams.

## **4. Matching Governance Strategies**

### **4.1 Improve the incentive mechanism for public participation.**

Providing appropriate incentives for the active involvement of volunteer police in grassroots social governance will encourage them to continue such behavior. At present, the assessment mechanism for volunteer police activities is not well-developed, offering only a small amount of bonus or recognition for a few outstanding volunteers, without a suitable assessment and reward system, resulting in a lack of enthusiasm and motivation among most volunteer police. Survey results show that appropriate reward measures can stimulate their enthusiasm for participating in grassroots social governance. Therefore, it is necessary to further explore and improve the incentive guarantee mechanism, focusing on the different needs of different groups of volunteer police, and develop attractive and diversified incentive measures to create a positive atmosphere of "compete, learn, catch up, help, and surpass," making the volunteer police team more dynamic and vital.

### **4.2 Establish an evaluation mechanism for public participation.**

Further improve the public evaluation perspective, taking the satisfaction of the public as the main pillar for continuously optimizing the participation mechanism of Hangzhou's "Million Volunteer Police." Especially in actively understanding and meeting the needs of the public, the Hangzhou municipal government and the Public Security Bureau should enrich and expand the content of the evaluation mechanism, optimize from the perspective of the effectiveness of the "Million Volunteer Police" in participating in grassroots social safety governance, public needs, and opinions and suggestions, and promptly communicate and resolve the demands reflected by the public. It is essential to effectively introduce a third-party expert evaluation system, hold regular seminars and experience exchange meetings, and establish cooperative mechanisms with enterprises to further enhance the enthusiasm and sense of responsibility of volunteer police in participating in grassroots social safety governance.

## **References**

- [1] Hilgers, D. and Schmidhuber, L. (2018) Open government: exploring patterns of mobile citizen-government interaction based on individual-level data. In: Albach, H., Meffert, H., Pinkwart, A., Reichwald, R., and Swiatczak, L. (eds.), *European Cities in Dynamic Competition*, Berlin: Springer, pp. 57–72.
- [2] Pepper M. Volunteer police, choosing to serve: exploring, comparing, and assessing volunteer policing in the United States and the United Kingdom[J]. *Policing & Society*,2020,30(7).
- [3] DeMarco J,Bifulco A. Shared Practice, Learning, and Goals between Police and Young People: A Qualitative Analysis of the Na-

tional Volunteer Police Cadets[J]. Policing An International Journal,2020,15(4).

**About the author:**

JiaLing Wang, Female, Han nationality, from Chun'an, Zhejiang, currently a master's student at China Jiliang University, majoring in Public Administration.



# Difficulties and Thoughts on Tax Late Payment System in Judicial Practice

Hongjie Wang

China Jiliang University, Hangzhou310000, China

---

**Abstract:** Late payment fee is a certain percentage of late payment tax charged according to the number of days of late payment for taxpayers who do not pay tax according to the tax deadline. The provisions of the Tax Administration Law on the tax late payment system are slightly superficial, resulting in tax cases in which there is confusion in the enforcement of tax authorities and differences in the judiciary's decisions. With the implementation of the new Administrative Compulsory Law, the nature of late payment and the upper limit of tax collection have been hotly debated. Based on the author's own tax work experience and legal knowledge, this paper aims to clarify the legal basis for the collection of late payment fee and the upper limit of collection, in order to facilitate the grassroots tax enforcement.

**Keywords:** Late Payment; Administrative Litigation; Tax Administration Law; Administrative Compulsory Law

---

A tax subject's failure to pay taxes beyond the legal tax deadline constitutes late payment, a very concise definition that has generated many controversies in concrete practice. In the judicial practice, the tax authority's "sky-high late payment fee" is basically rejected by the court, but the tax authority still acquiesces to the existence of super principal late payment fee according to the caliber of the State Administration of Taxation (SAT), which is that "tax late payment fee is not an additional fine". The law enforcement authorities are still acquiescing to the existence of overdue fines according to the caliber of the State Administration of Taxation that "tax late payment is not an additional fine". With the implementation of the Administrative Compulsory Law in 2012, the different provisions of the two laws on late payment have intensified the debate on the issue of tax late payment in theory and practice. The limitations of the legislation and the disputes in practice show that China's tax late payment system needs to be improved.

## 1. A Brief Overview of the Legal Provisions on Tax Late Payment System

In 1993, the newly adopted Tax Administration Law made it clear that taxpayers who failed to pay tax within the specified period would be charged a late fee of two thousandths of a cent per day and enforced together with the tax, and the late tax has a legal basis from now on. However, the legislation does not provide for the nature of tax late payment.

After the revision of the Tax Administration Law in 2001, the rate of tax late payment was adjusted to five ten-thousandths of the tax, and at the same time, the tax late payment was separated from the article that the taxpaying body should pay the tax on time, and became an independent article. However, the nature of late tax payment is still not explained in the legislation.

In 2012, the Administrative Compulsory Law came into force, in which it is clear that the late payment fee added to the fine belongs to the administrative compulsory enforcement, and the late payment fee cannot exceed the principal amount of the fine, so as to regulate the "sky-high late payment fee" which has been criticized in the administrative law enforcement. However, the Administrative Compulsory Law also stipulates that the late payment of tax shall be charged in accordance with the Tax Administration Law, i.e., the late payment of tax shall be dealt with in accordance with the principle that the special law is superior to the general law. In this way, the nature of the tax late payment and the collection of the upper limit of the problem, still stays in the old "tax collection and management law" on the basis of the unresolved.

## 2. Controversies in the Current Late Payment System

### 2.1. Disputes over the Nature of Late Payment of Taxes in Administrative Litigation

In administrative litigation, the plaintiff is often in accordance with the Administrative Compulsory Law will be recognized as an indirect way of administrative enforcement, the reason is that the late payment fee in accordance with the daily levy of five ten thousandths, from the quantitative point of view of the nature of punishment. However, the tax authorities are generally in accordance with the relevant inter-

pretation of the State Administration of Taxation, that the late payment of tax arrears belongs to the nature of “making up for the tax”, is the taxpayer’s delay in the fulfillment of their tax obligations and the interest generated, does not belong to the administrative coercion provided for in the Administrative Coercion Law. From the point of view of jurisprudence, the former belongs to the implementation of penalties, while the latter belongs to the unpaid state taxes and damages. The interpretation of late payment “administrative compulsory law” does not specify, but the same term in different laws between the inconsistency is not conducive to grass-roots law enforcement.

## **2.2. Whether the subjective intention of the taxpayer should be distinguished in the collection of late payment charges**

Another controversy in judicial practice is on the issue of whether late payment should be charged. In this regard, the “tax administration law” also exists in the obvious gaps. The current law enforcement of the relevant tax authorities in the collection of late fees, mainly based on the “Tax Collection and Management Law”, “Tax Collection and Management Law Enforcement Rules” as the basis.

From the provisions of the Tax Collection and Administration Law, China’s current legal system of tax collection and administration does not distinguish between the subjective level of taxpayers who fail to pay taxes in accordance with the prescribed deadlines and the practice of charging late payment fees. That is, as long as the taxpayer exists the behavior of late payment of tax, even if subjectively there is no intent or gross negligence, also add the same tax late fee, which is contrary to the principle of fairness of the tax law? The author believes that this kind of regulations and our tax collection and management system has long been practicing “treasury centralism” position is inseparable, too much emphasis on the realization of the national tax rights and ignored the rights of the administrative counterparts. In fact, from the domestic administrative law of other administrative violations of the subjective nature of the distinction.

## **2.3. Whether the upper limit of late payment charge exists or not**

In the process of real law enforcement, whether the upper limit of late payment of tax exists is also the focus of the debate between tax authorities and administrative counterparts. Taxpayers usually claim that the late payment fee cannot exceed the principal amount of the tax, in fact, the legal premise of the administrative relative’s claim is erroneous, and the Law on Tax Administration does not stipulate the upper limit of the late payment fee for the tax. Therefore, the amount of late payment fee exceeding the amount of tax principal does not violate the law.

However, it is questionable whether the existence of a tax late fee without a cap is consistent with the legislative objectives. The original design of the tax penalty system itself is to urge taxpayers to fulfill their tax obligations in time, and to reflect the principle of tax fairness through the time value of tax. However, the tax late payment far exceeds the tax itself, the reason for the existence of the taxpayer’s ignorance or the tax authorities do not act, but the consequences need to be borne by the taxpayer, which in itself can not talk about the fairness of the tax. In addition, the existence of sky-high late payment is not in line with the principle of reasonableness in administrative law, nor is it in line with the principle of protection of administrative relative legislation in administrative law. In the specific judicial practice, the court will seldom support the tax authorities to exceed the tax itself, and it also shows that the court does not support the administrative behavior of the tax authorities to exceed the limit to collect late payment.

# **3. some ideas about the reform of tax late payment fee**

## **3.1. Clarify the Nature of Late Payment Fee**

The different meanings of the name of late payment in different laws have formed an obstacle even for professional lawyers, not to mention the hundreds of millions of taxpayers in the country with different legal levels. The clarity of the Administrative Compulsory Law on the system of late payment is worthy of reference, and the Tax Collection and Administration Law should also converge in this direction. The 2015 Revision Draft of the Tax Collection and Administration Law breaks down the system of tax late payment in the current Tax Collection and Administration Law into two parts, tax interest and late payment, and provides for them separately, which is a clearer signal and the basic direction of the reform of tax late payment in China. Under the legislative mode of coexistence of tax interest and late payment fee, a lower

rate of tax interest is added to the taxpaying subject who pays tax late during the period of occupying state tax money. At the same time, according to the subjective fault of the tax subject to distinguish, the subjective malicious taxpayers to introduce administrative law in the late payment system, not only to achieve the unity of the law, to protect the realization of the state's tax rights, but also to take into account the protection of the rights and interests of taxpayers.

### **3.2. Clearly setting the upper limit of late payment.**

The original design of the late payment system is to urge the taxpayers to fulfill their tax obligations in time, and the high late payment fee is detrimental to the rights and interests of the taxpayers and conflicts with the purpose of the legislation, and even reduces the willingness of the taxpayers to make up for the tax payment to a certain extent. In particular, the current Tax Administration Law does not specify the upper limit, and some tax authorities believe that since the law does not set the upper limit of late payment fee, that is to say, the legislator allows the tax authorities to levy late payment fee in excess of the principal amount of the tax, and the author can't agree with such a point of view at all. As an administrative law, the Tax Administration Law exists to regulate the law enforcement and limit the abuse of public power, which can never be interpreted according to the principle of "nothing prohibited by law" of the civil law system, but should be standardized in accordance with the principles of reasonableness, proportionality, and instruction of the administrative law.

## **Conclusion**

In recent years, with the improvement of citizens' legal awareness, administrative litigation, many cases of failure to expose the inadequacy of the tax late payment system is also more and more eye-catching. The Tax Administration Law was enacted earlier, and its over-emphasis on the realization of the national tax rights has a strong color of the planned economy era, which has produced a lot of discomfort in the new tax law enforcement environment under the socialist market economy. The State Administration of Taxation (SAT) has also caused confusion in grassroots law enforcement and unfavorable situation in administrative litigation due to its variable and hesitant interpretation of late payment fees. In the long run, it is easy to breed tax-enterprise conflicts and undermine the credibility of the tax authorities. The Tax Administration Law should be revised as soon as possible to implement the principle of tax law and standardize the law enforcement of the tax authorities, so as to protect the taxpayers' legitimate rights and interests more effectively while safeguarding the tax rights of the country.

## **References**

- [1] Song Jiayi. Research on the legal system of tax late payment in China[D]. Yantai University,2023.DOI:10.27437/d.cnki.gyt-du.2023.000608.
- [2] Li Jing. Research on Legal Problems of Tax Late Payment [D]. China University of Political Science and Law, 2023. DOI:10.27656/d.cnki.gzgzu.2023.000011.
- [3] Li Gang. Discussion on the Relationship between Tax Late Payment and Enforcement Late Payment - An Empirical Observation via Judicial Class Cases[J]. Tax Research,2022,(09):84-89.DOI:10.19376/j.cnki.cn11-1011/f.2022.09.005.

# What is the involution effect? The evolution of the concept in China

YangCui Weng

Asia-Europe Institute, Universiti Malaya, Kuala Lumpur50603, Malaysia

---

**Abstract:** The concept of involution has been widely used in the analysis of complex issues in Chinese society in the last two years, but the concept implied by this term has been far from its original meaning, and even in different fields the meaning of the concept is slightly different. This paper analyzes how the concept of involution has changed in different application scenarios since its introduction into economics discussions, highlighting the key connotation of “development without growth” in the concept of involution and how it has changed in terms of expression and causation.

**Keywords:** Involution Concept; Evolution; Development without Growth

---

## 1. Introduction

Thirty years after being introduced into the Chinese social sciences to analyze many problems in Chinese society, the topic of involution has become popular once again in extended application scenarios. There has been much confusion and controversy concept of the involution effect. We are concerned that the many and varied contributions of social scientists, mainstream media, and public opinion have led to a degree of conceptual chaos and concept misuse. The purpose here is to trace the evolution of a particular branch of involution so that we can better understand what this concept entails and its critical elements. First, we collected and analyzed 40 works of literature on involution in Web of Science and 1,095 in CNKI to describe the temporal evolution of involution in different application scenarios, and then we evaluated different scholars’ definitions of involution. Finally, the connotation of the concept of involution and the corresponding specific characteristics are summarized.

## 2. The birth: An economic perspective

The research time of involution lasts for 40 years from 1982 to 2022. However, the discussion of involitional effects in the literature predates this period, it is the German philosopher Immanuel Kant (1790) who is credited with having first coined the term “in-volutions theorie “, distinguishing involution from evolution. (Kant, 2008)

The term “involution” is used to describe a phenomenon of increasing refinement of the interior while all edges are fixed. Such general contrasts between types of change as a general taxonomic way the concept of involution might be usefully applied in a wide variety of contexts.(White, 1983) Geertz. C(1965) described the Java farmers’ move toward agricultural involution due to demographic pressure by drawing on the implications of refinement and rigidity within the basic model(Geertz, 1956) It is a persuasive interpretative paradigm on the interplay of economics and culture, there is no doubt that Geertz provokes deeper thinking (Elson, 2007; Kahn, 2016; White, 1983)

The interest of Chinese scholars in involution began with Huang Philip C.’s (1985) research on Chinese agricultural production. He interprets involution as severely diminishing remuneration per unit of labor input, such ineffective inputs lead to “growth without development” or “over-intensive growth”. (Huang, 1985, 2020) It is worth affirming that this understanding is likely to be universal and can be used to analyze smallholder economic problems in other countries. But Huang narrows the extent of involution, distinguished from Geertz, agricultural production is internally refined, but there is growth, also developed to a very limited extent. (Lu, 2021; Ma, 2016) It also changes the direction of analysis of the concept of involution, and the meaning becomes complex and entangled, due to the unclear starting point of the involution process. ((Guo, 2007; Liu & Qiu, 2004) The attribution of connotations to “growth without development” has given involution a powerful instrumental analytical value, as it can be used to analyze social development or organizations with structural rigidity or increasingly complex internal but ineffective governance, leading to the generalization and misuse of the concept of involution.(Ma, 2016)

### 3. The evolution: Political and Sociological perspectives

In the initial phase, involution is more at the economic level to explain why society operates without a big breakthrough, especially without transforming from an agrarian society to a capitalist economy. The endless debate has taken “involution” research from anthropology to the field of rural development, and rural governance, and is related to the poverty alleviation strategy implemented in China and has begun to extend to the fields of community governance, precision governance in the Era of Artificial Intelligence, public service provision, social organization development, and education.

Another influential scholar who drove these developments was Prasenjit, who was the first to use the concept to describe the involution of state power. State power involution means that state institutions expand their administrative functions not by increasing the effectiveness of old or new (in this case, interpersonal or other administrative resources) institutions, but by replicating or expanding old state-society relationships-like China’s old profit-making brokerage system. (Prasenjit, 1991)

In this interpretation, involution deviates from the original theoretical presupposition: the subjective initiative of the actor is consistent with the goal of development, and development without qualitative change is a creative deficit and an external limitation. Regime involution, however, is the result of the actor’s disagreement with the system’s goals, which interferes with or displaces the development goals. (Ma, 2016)

The results of the analysis give us the information that the key elements of the understanding of involution proposed by Geertz, Huang, and Prasenjit, have been discerned by scholars in the period 2004-2005. Since then, the concept of involution has been closely associated with the theme of “governance,” whether it is rural governance, grassroots governance, poverty governance, or good governance.

Taking 2019 as the boundary, before that the academic comprehension of involution was balanced all of the views held by the three researchers we mentioned earlier, which emphasized the diminishing marginal efficiency of inputs and also the refinement or pattern replication within the system. Differently, scholars have begun to further unpack the meaning of growth without development, suggesting that it is a deviation of the actual goal from the predetermined one, and attributing such deviation to the inconsistency between the subjective will to act and the organizational goal, emphasizing the role of individual initiative in organizational development. And afterward, the constraints affecting individual initiatives are further discussed, continuing the discussion of involution in the field of rural development or poverty alleviation, such constraints as limited resources. In the competition for limited resources, the complexity, and over-density within the organization are interpreted as undesirable competition. Especially in the field of education, such meaningful applications are more popular. However, this change deviates from Geertz and Huang’s presupposition of involution, which in their understanding is due to a lack of economic competition.

### 4. Conclusions

We have, thus far, identified two elements for the development of the concept of involution.

(1) The manifestations of involution, especially in the different applications specifically:

- Growth without development, with diminishing marginal effects per unit
- Replication of a single model
- The actual target deviates from the original target
- Excessive competition

(2) Causes of involution.

-There are external pressures or restrictions on the development of affairs and can inhibit truly innovative development (Lu, 2021)

-The impact of individual autonomy. One scenario is a lack of subjectivity and creativity, and the development of actual goals away from the original objectives. (He, 2019) Another is to obtain limited resources, some individual initiative is fully stimulated and caught in an infinite cycle of self-flagellation triggering undesirable competition.

The instrumental value of the concept of involution makes various fields easily borrow its abstract concepts whichever sense the concept of involution is used, it describes a developmental dilemma or a non-ideal type of institutional change pattern. (Chen & Yu, 2017) The

use of the concept of involution by Chinese scholars is more biased towards the negative meaning of “growth without development” which may not have been in the first place. In this premise, many variations of the combination of the performance of involution and causal elements are possible. Furthermore, the important purpose of researchers for involution research is to “de-involute”. To understand the original meaning of the concept of involution and its subsequent changes, understand the characteristics and connotations of involution especially as it is generally accepted by the public today, and for us to apply the concept in the future.

## References

- [1]Chen, C., & Yu, RuiMiao. (2017). Research on the Internalization Problem of Allocation of Poverty-Alleviation Resource: Review, Evaluation and Prospect. *SOCIAL CONSTRUCTION*.
- [2]Elson, R. E. (2007). Clifford Geertz, 1926–2006: meaning, method and Indonesian economic history. *Bulletin of Indonesian Economic Studies*, 43(2), 251-264.
- [3]Fang, J. (2014). The Involution Dilemma and Governance of Rural Poverty Reduction in China. *SOCIAL CONSTRUCTION*(2), 84-94.
- [4]Geertz, C. (1956). Religious belief and economic behavior in a central Javanese town: some preliminary considerations. *Economic development and cultural change*, 4(2), 134-158.
- [5]Guo, J. (2007). A New Interpretation of the Concept of Involution. *Sociological Studies*(3), 194-208.
- [6]He, X. (2019). Governing Via Top-down Regulations and Grassroots Governance Internalization: Dialectics of Grassroots Governance. *Journal of Social Sciences*(4), 64-70.
- [7]Huang, P. (1985). *The peasant economy and social change in North China*: Stanford University Press.
- [8]Huang, P. (2020). The Theory of Peasant Economy and Involution and De-Involution. *Rural China*, 17(2), 173-193.
- [9]Kahn, J. S. (2016). Indonesia after the Demise of Involution: Critique of a Debate. In *Critical Anthropology* (pp. 119-148): Routledge.
- [10]Kant, I. (2008). *Critique of judgment*: Newcomb Livraria Press.
- [11]Li, Z. (2017). The Reflection of Involution Phenomenon in Rural Governance. *China Rural Survey*.
- [12]Liu, S., & Qiu, Z. (2004). Conceptualization of “involution”. *Sociological Review of China*(5), 96-110.
- [13]Lu, X. (2021). Involution from a multidimensional perspective: research status and concept combining. *J Huazhong Univ Sci Technol*, 6, 130-136.
- [14]Ma, W. (2016). Rethinking Involution: the Explanation of Growth without Development Phenomenon in Grassroots Governance. *Chinese Public Administration*(5), 26-31.
- [15]Prasenjit, D. (1991). *Culture, Power, and the State: Rural North China, 1900-1942* (Vol. 27): Stanford University Press.
- [16]Su, Z., & Xu, W. (2020). Shaping Farmer Subjectivity: Pathways out of the Poverty Alleviation “Involution” Dilemma after 2020. *Modern Economic Research*(8), 29-35. doi:10.13891/j.cnki.mer.2020.08.006
- [17]White, B. (1983). Agricultural involution and its critics: twenty years after Clifford Geertz. *ISS Working Paper Series/General Series*, 6, 1-39.
- [18]Xing, C. (2015). Analysis of “Involution” to Poverty Alleviation Project Target Deviation from Perspective of Village. *Jiangnan Academic*, 34(5), 18-26.
- [19]Xu, Y. (2021). Digital Fetishism : The Essence of Involution. *Exploration and Free Views*, 3, 57-65.

# English Translation Analysis of Live Commerce Discourse Based on Applied Translation Theory

Mei Dong, Jianuo Zhang

School of Foreign Languages, Xi'an Shiyou University, Xi'an 710065, China

---

**Abstract:** With the continuous development and progress of Internet technology and economy, the economic and cultural exchanges between countries in the world are becoming closer and closer. Cross-border electronic commerce as an emerging industry is gradually developing, and translation plays a crucial role in this field. In the Internet era, more new forms of economy appear in people's lives. As a new marketing model, live commerce can enable consumers to see commodities in front of the mobile phone screen, which greatly promotes the development of e-commerce economy. In this context, this paper collects relevant material, summarizes the basic characteristics of live commerce discourse, and analyzes the English translation skills combined with domestic applied translation theories. It can provide a reference for translators and scholars.

**Keywords:** Live Commerce Translation; Applied Translation; Live Commerce Characteristics

---

## 1. Introduction

In the Internet era, technology are developing rapidly and mobile devices are widely used, especially the wide application of short videos and live-stream technology. Live commerce has quickly become a new shopping method. Users can watch live-stream and shop anytime and anywhere on the applications. Live commerce is the combination of live-stream and e-commerce. Live-stream is a sales tool, and e-commerce is the foundation. It has not only changed the traditional shopping mode, but also brought new growth points for the e-commerce industry. It will certainly become one of the fastest ways for the public to shop, develop more forms and have more audience groups.<sup>[1]</sup> However, the core audience of cross-border e-commerce in China is foreign consumers, language and cultural barriers need to be reduced as much as possible. In this process, the translation quality of live commerce has a key impact on cross-border e-commerce. Therefore, under the guidance of applied translation theories, this paper analyzed the characteristics of live commerce discourse, discusses the problems in translation from the aspects of word and sentence, and puts forward corresponding translation methods.

## 2. Overview of Chinese applied translation theories

Applied translation covers a wide range and large volume, including all kinds of languages in daily contact and practical applications. It involves social economy, scientific research, foreign exchanges, production fields and other aspects<sup>[2]</sup>.

The practice of applied translation in China is developing rapidly, and Chinese scholars have many perspectives on applied translation. Han Ziman believes that except for literary text translation, all types of text translation belong to applied translation. Different from literary translation, applied translation focuses on the information of text, and generally only needs to accurately convey the original content<sup>[3]</sup>. Fang Mengzhi pointed out three principles on applied translation: purport expression, conformity and common understanding. Purport expression means to achieve the translation purpose and convey the main idea. Conformity requires translators to follow the specification of the target language. Common understanding is to enable readers to understand the translation clearly. In the translation process, purport expression is the purpose, conformity is the outline and common understanding is the measure.<sup>[4]</sup>

## 3. Characteristics of live commerce discourse

As a new marketing pattern, live commerce has distinct discourse construction model and language characteristics. It is a combination of advertisement, e-commerce, entertainment and other elements, with both the language characteristics of traditional broadcast and new linguistic features of live commerce in the network era<sup>[5]</sup>.



### 3.1. Simple conversation mode

Live commerce is usually carried out on electronic live-stream platforms. Its target group is the public, so the words and discourses are simple and popular, mostly simple sentences. Elliptical sentences and imperative sentences are commonly used. Four-character phrases are often used, such as “秒拍秒发”, “拍一发三”, “麻麻辣辣”. In addition, live commerce discourses need to have strong affinity and infection to attract users to watch. The expressions are colloquial and similar to daily communication with friends. The language is lively, fluent, and friendly. In this way, audiences could have a sense of interaction, which can narrow the distance between live streamers and audiences, thus giving consumers a good experience. Their dialogue is relatively simple and fixed, usually with a simple greeting such as “家人们下午好, 欢迎宝宝们走进直播间! ”. After a brief greeting, streamers will begin with a brief introduction and preview of today’s products[6]. The way and process of introduction are generally fixed and similar.

### 3.2. Novel vocabularies

As a new sales mode, there are many differences between live commerce and traditional advertising. Firstly, live commerce has certain pertinence, it has a tendency to a certain type of consumer group. Streamers use special appellation for consumers, and even have exclusive titles for their fans, such as “美眉们”, “老铁们”, “宝妈们”, “集美们”.

Secondly, its words need to highlight the characteristics of goods, e-commerce uses the compound adjectives to describe colors in a more vivid and specific way, which can increase the lightspot and selling points of products. For example, “活力橙”, “奇幻泡梦”, “甜橙气泡冰”, “生椰拿铁粽”. Moreover, it is convenient to improve the taste of products and increase the appeal to consumers.

In addition, when introducing the ingredients of products, streamers will also speak a lot of professional terms to stand out the quality.

### 3.3. Exaggerated expression

At the sentence level, live commerce often uses exaggerated expression and strong emotions to accentuate the atmosphere. Interrogative sentences, imperative sentences, parallel sentences and exclamatory sentences are often used in live-stream. Interrogatives can enrich the expression of discourse and attract the consumers’ attention. Parallel sentences can deepen the users’ impression of products. Exclamatory sentences can express the strong subjective will of streamers, achieve the exaggerated expression effect and energize live atmosphere at the same time. In the live rooms, they even ring the bell and shout slogans to set the mood.

## 4. English Translation Analysis

Firstly, in translation practice, translators must follow the basic translation principles of “faithfulness, expressiveness and elegance”, adopt diversified translation methods according to the actual situation, and consider translation strategies from multiple perspectives of language and culture. The structure of live commerce discourse is not complicated. However, translators need to pay attention to grammar to ensure that the translation conforms to the target thinking logic and idiomatic expression. Furthermore, translators should also think from the perspective of streamers and audiences. Streamers requires exaggerated language to attract users, but consumers need the real product introduction. Translators should balance these two needs, keep the authenticity of information. But don’t be rigid and lose the interest and pleasure of the language style.

### 4.1. In terms of vocabularies

About the translation of appellation for consumers, “我们姐妹们”, “这位姐妹”, “老铁们”, “小哥哥小姐姐” can not be directly translated as “our sister”, “this sister”, “old ironmen” and “little brothers and little sisters”. These translations are unidiomatic, strange for foreigners. They can be translated as: ladies, honey, my friend, my love, everybody and guys. In this way, the timeliness of original text is properly reduced, the consumers’ appellation is completely changed. It can shorten the distance between audiences and streamers and increase the publicity and agitation effect of live.

Besides, live commerce frequently uses compound adjectives, such as “自留爆款”, “超级畅销款”, which can be translated as “self reserved best-seller” and “host-seller and fast-seller”. Through the use of hyphens, the information of multiple words is fused together to

form a rich and concise description. Thus avoiding the long and wordy, make the expression more concise and powerful. At the same time, it can express the multiple attributes of product and make the description more vivid.

#### 4.2. In terms of sentences

Due to the structural differences between Chinese and English, Chinese emphasizes parataxis while English emphasizes hypotaxis. English translation should focus on the core meaning of the original text, rather than the structure and form of sentences. For instance, streamers often repeat the phrase “它真的非常非常的亮眼。” to introduce a product. It can be translated as: It's super shiny. Omission can cut down repetitive adjectives, simplify complexity, and preserve key points. In Chinese, repetition is convenient to emphasize, but it is not necessary in English. When streamers sell clothes, they usually say: “它可以完美的遮住你的小肚腩, 挡住你的拜拜肉, 让你看上去至少可以显瘦五斤。” If the literal translation method is adopted, it is translated as: It can perfectly cover up your belly, block out your “bye meat”, and make you look at least five pounds thinner. This translation is in written form and can be more simply and accurately translated as: Hide your fat on belly. Hide your fat on your arms. Make you so slim at least 5 pounds visually. The original text is converted into three imperative sentences, which are similar in structure and catchy. Meanwhile, they are highly motivating, giving audiences a sense of need and urgency.

Moreover, translators need to adopt flexible translation methods. For example, “你穿上它绝对百分之百的回头率。” can not be literally translated as: You'll turn heads 100 percent in it. It doesn't accurately express the original meaning. In order to avoid ambiguity and maintain the simplicity, it can be adapted translated as: This one is a head turner for sure. Convey clear and accurate information, and close to the expression habits of foreign consumers.

### 5. Conclusion

Applied translation involves a wide range and various types, which are enriched and changed with the continuous development of society. In the cross-border e-commerce industry, new live commerce is developing rapidly because of its convenient and affordable advantages. According to different product types, translators need to make specific analysis and adopt appropriate translation methods for practice. Good translation can not only promote the development and growth of China's economy, but also increase international exchanges.

### References

- [1] Yang Q. Characteristics and Development Trend of Mainstream Media Live Commerce[J]. West China Broadcasting TV, 2020(16):31-33.
- [2] Fnag M Z. and Fu J M. Construction of the History of Pragmatic Translation in China[J]. Foreign Languages in China, 2023, 20(02):91-97.
- [3] Han Z M. Applied Translation: Practice and Theoretical Research[J]. Chinese Science & Technology Translators Journal. 2005(04).
- [4] Fang M Z. 30 Years of Applied Translation Research(1980-2010)[J]. Shanghai Journal of Translators, 2012, (02):22-27.
- [5] Xu M Q. and Zhu X J. Normative Research on Live Commerce Language[J]. West China Broadcasting TV, 2022, 43(19):61-63.
- [6] Zhu L. Study on E-Commerce Live-Stream Language from the Perspective of Discourse Analysis[D]. Shanghai Normal University, 2023.

### About the author:

Mei Dong(1969-), female, Han, Doctor Degree, Xi'an Shiyou University, Baoding City, Hebei Province, Associate Professor, Translation.

Jianuo Zhang(2000-), female, Han, Master Degree, Xi'an Shiyou University, Xi'an City, Shaanxi Province, Translation.

# Functional module design based on intelligent cleaning robot

Shizhang Dong, Guangwei Wang, Mingchen Wu, Zhendong Liu

Zhengzhou University of Light Industry, College of Mechanical and Electrical Engineering, Henan450000, China

---

**Abstract:** In this paper, the functional design of intelligent cleaning robot is studied in depth. Ankaï micro development board is used as the core, and advanced technologies such as machine vision and laser radar are integrated to realize accurate garbage identification and classification. Through the lightweight YOLOv5s neural network, the rapid detection of objects is realized, and the mechanical arm is used to perform garbage picking. The random coverage method is used for path planning to ensure comprehensive cleaning, and the improved Bug2 algorithm improves the efficiency of obstacle avoidance. The system design aims to improve the cleaning efficiency, reduce the cost and promote environmental protection, which indicates the wide application prospect of intelligent cleaning robot in the future.

**Keywords:** Cleaning Robot; Image Recognition; Path Planning

---

## 1. Introduction

The sweeping robot is a smart home device that can clean the floor autonomously and reduce people's housework burden. It usually uses advanced sensors and navigation technology, which can automatically perceive and avoid obstacles, and clean according to the different materials and fouling degree of the floor<sup>[1]</sup>. The shape of the sweeping robot is generally disc-shaped, with a bottom rotating brush and a suction port. Some high-end models are also equipped with high-precision navigation equipment such as lidar or camera<sup>[2]</sup> to more accurately perceive the surrounding environment.

Sweeping robots have many advantages. First of all, it can reduce people's housework burden, save time and energy. Secondly, it is able to sweep some areas that are difficult to clean, such as under the bed, the bottom of the furniture and the corner. In addition, the sweeping robot has a low noise level and does not interfere with the rest and work of family members<sup>[3]</sup>. However, sweeping robots also have some limitations. Due to its smaller size and lower cleaning capacity, it may not completely replace the traditional vacuum cleaner. For some special dirt or ground types, additional cleaning measures may be required.

The world's first mass-produced intelligent sweeping robot was launched by the home appliance giant Lex in 2001<sup>[4]</sup> and named it 'trilobite'. Designers hope that this product can climb every inch of the world like arthropods. IROBOT, an American robot expert, has been committed to the research and development of Roomba series sweeping robots since 2002<sup>[5]</sup>. Since the development of this series, in addition to the significant optimization of energy saving, size, appearance and noise, the biggest technological innovation is the embedding of 'optimization algorithm'. South Korea's Ottoro vision robot<sup>[6]</sup>, equipped with multiple ultrasonic detectors and two cameras. The laser projection installed on the charging pile projects the navigation map onto the ceiling, and the robot determines its position according to the navigation map. The robot will automatically avoid obstacles based on the information collected by the detector.

This paper refers to the characteristics of intelligent cleaning robots such as garbage identification and manipulator picking, and uses machine vision and image recognition algorithms to accurately identify different types of garbage. By analyzing the camera to capture the image, the garbage type can be distinguished and processed. The path planning algorithm is used to quickly plan the optimal picking path according to the environment map and the target location. By combining map data and real-time sensor information, robots can avoid obstacles, optimize travel paths, and efficiently collect garbage. This paper enables the intelligent garbage picking robot to classify and collect garbage more accurately and efficiently, reduce labor costs, improve garbage disposal efficiency, and reduce the impact on the environment, bringing greater convenience.

## 2. Design of cleaning robot function module

This paper mainly studies the car using the development board (Ankaiwei) as the main control. We use the energy module, laser radar, encoder, WiFi module, mechanical arm module, motor drive, camera and other hardware to complete object recognition, garbage pickup, path

planning, automatic obstacle avoidance. The object detection function module we currently use pycharm + python + pytorch-gpu + Yolov5s algorithm for programming. The interface is shown in Figure 1.

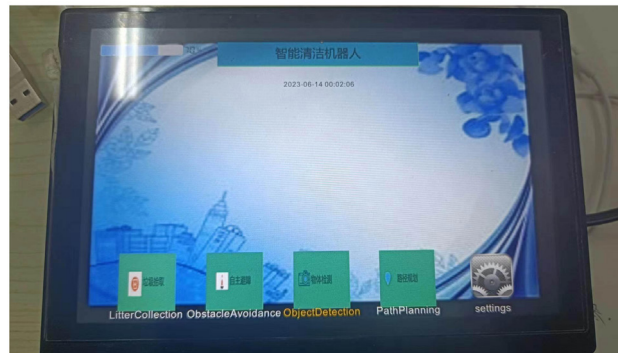


Figure 1 Function display interface

## 2.1 Algorithm introduction

Considering the hardware itself and the need to quickly detect items and costs, this paper uses a lightweight YOLOv5s neural network for training to realize the recognition of U disks, keys, and rings.

The YOLO neural network structure first inputs a 480\* 480 picture, passes through a certain number of convolutional layers and pooling layers, and finally passes through two fully connected layers to generate an output of 7\*7\*30. Considering the hardware itself and the need to quickly detect items and costs, this paper uses a lightweight YOLOv5s neural network for training to realize the recognition of U disks, keys, and rings. The YOLO neural network structure first inputs a 480\*480 picture, passes through a certain number of convolutional layers and pooling layers, and finally passes through two fully connected layers to generate an output of 7\*7\*30.

## 2.2 Cleaning robot garbage pickup module

The main function of the module is to process the detected items. If it is banana peel, paper scraps and other garbage items, the main control command is issued through the Ankaï emblem board to control the manipulator to clamp the items into the garbage bin. In order to grasp objects efficiently and accurately, the robotic arm needs to combine various technologies such as target recognition and position estimation, path planning and precise control of machine fingers.

## 2.3 Cleaning robot path planning module

In this paper, the random coverage method is used for path planning, which means that the robot attempts to cover the working area according to a certain mobile algorithm, such as triangle and pentagon trajectory. If obstacles are encountered, the corresponding steering function is performed. This method is a low-cost strategy that trades time for space, such as 100 % coverage regardless of time. The random coverage method does not need to locate, nor does it have an environmental map, nor can it plan the path, so its moving path basically depends on the built-in algorithm, and the pros and cons of the algorithm also determine the quality and efficiency of its cleaning.

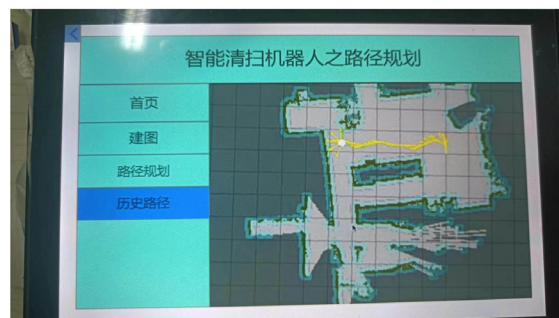


Figure 2 path planning display interface

## 2.4 Cleaning robot automatic obstacle avoidance module

The task of the obstacle avoidance algorithm is to update the target trajectory in real time and bypass the obstacle because the input of the sensor senses the existence of the obstacle when the robot performs the normal walking task. The Bug algorithm is a simple obstacle avoidance algorithm. Its basic idea is to walk around the detected obstacle contour after finding the obstacle, so as to bypass it. There are many variants of the Bug algorithm, such as the Bug1 algorithm. The robot first completely revolves around the object and then leaves from the point with the shortest distance from the target. The efficiency of the Bug1 algorithm is very low, but it can ensure that the robot achieves the goal.

In this paper, the improved Bug2 algorithm is adopted. At the beginning, the robot will track the contour of the object, but it will not circle around the object completely. When the robot can move directly to the target, it can be separated from the obstacle directly, so as to achieve a relatively short total path of robot walking. In addition, there are many other variants of the Bug algorithm, such as the tangent Bug algorithm and so on. In many simple scenarios, the Bug algorithm is relatively easy and convenient to implement, but they do not take into account the limitations of the robot 's dynamics, so it is not so reliable and easy to use in more complex actual environments.

## 3.Conclusion

Based on the existing technology, this paper designs a set of garbage cleaning robot with garbage picking as the main object. The specific functional framework of each part is established, including movement, recognition, clamping, radar monitoring and so on. The wireless communication technology is used to realize the intelligent connection between the mobile terminal and the product, and the motor is used to control the movement of the car and the movement of the manipulator. Machine vision is used to realize the recognition and picking function of garbage. Laser radar monitoring is used to realize automatic obstacle avoidance function. The cleaning robot designed in this paper can choose a variety of modes, and can also control the movement and picking of the robot through the mobile terminal. In the future, garbage pickup robots will play a greater role in cities and communities. As technology continues to advance, these robots will become smarter, more efficient, and able to adapt to the needs of different environments and tasks.

## References

- [1]Ye Li, the 7th China Design Intelligence Award(DIA).2022 China Design Intelligence Award[J].Design,2023,36(06):7-22. DOI:10.20055/j.cnki.1003-0069.000542.
- [2]Lu Kang, Jiuxiang Duan, Wenjie Zhang & Zhang Tao. (2023).Intelligent inspection technology of new energy power generation based on visual laser fusion. (02),173-181. doi:10.19944/j.eptep.1674-8069.2023.02.010.
- [3]Yi Liang, Buyun Wang, Peng Quan, Kai Sun, Weizhen Wang & Yubing Wang. (2023).Research on walking characteristics of variable slope photovoltaic cleaning robot. Journal of Ordnance Equipment Engineering (03),239-245.
- [4] (2002-11-21). Elex repositions small appliances. Economic reference.
- [5]Banerjee, Nandan, et al. "Lifelong mapping in the wild: Novel strategies for ensuring map stability and accuracy over time evaluated on thousands of robots." Robotics and Autonomous Systems 164 (2023): 104403.
- [6]Baoyou Wang. Innovative design and experimental research of sorting robot based on machine vision [J].Robot industry,2023(03):78-81. DOI:10.19609/j.cnki.cn10-1324/tp.2023.03.008.

# Research on the importance of improving the level of rural governance under the rural revitalization strategy -- taking X community as an example

Yu Xue

China Jiliang University, Hangzhou 310000, China

---

**Abstract:** In the report of the 19th National Congress of the Communist Party of China (CPC), the strategy of rural revitalization was clearly put forward, and it was clearly stated that the problem of agricultural and rural peasants was the fundamental problem of the national economy and People's livelihood, we must always take solving the "Three rural issues" as the top priority of the whole party's work. Therefore, the implementation of rural revitalization strategy is the inevitable trend of historical development, but also the inevitable solution to the new era of our social contradictions. <sup>[1]</sup> in order to promote the high-quality development of agricultural and rural areas, it is necessary to carry out the rural revitalization strategy. This paper takes the X community, Henan province as an example, focus on the rural revitalization strategy under the promotion of rural governance level, the impact of high-quality rural development.

**Keywords:** Rural Revitalization; Rural Governance Level; Party Building Lead

---

## The necessity of rural governance

The modernization of rural governance is an important way to solve the current problems of rural governance in China, and it is also the basic requirement to realize the modernization of the national governance system and governance capacity. To solve the main contradictions in our society, especially in the countryside, and realize the peasants' yearning for a better life, the modernization of rural governance is an inevitable requirement. Therefore, exploring the effective path to realize the modernization of rural governance and breaking through the bottleneck of rural governance has become an important guarantee for achieving high-quality rural development in the new era.

## 1. Analysis of factors affecting the level of rural governance

### 1.1 Building of grassroots Party organizations

In China, no matter how rural society changes and how individual demands change, the Party and the government are still the most trusted objects for farmers to solve problems and express demands, and they are also the characteristics of rural governance in New China. Rural grass-roots party organizations should effectively improve their own construction, enhance the ability of party members and leading cadres to control rural governance, let rural party members and cadres become the "backbone" of leading rural social development, go deep into the masses, take the mass line, drive the masses to actively participate in modern social governance, and realize the organic unity of the Party's leadership in the modernization of rural governance.

### 1.2. Talent team

The key and core issue of the modernization of rural governance is the modernization of people and the modernization of farmers. Therefore, the core of the modernization of rural governance is to cultivate a group of rural talent teams that adapt to the revitalization of rural areas and improve the ability and level of modern rural governance. Therefore, it is necessary to actively and efficiently cultivate local talents, excavate local outstanding young talents, and encourage them to join the Party organization, become the new force of the grass-roots party members, and optimize the structure of the grass-roots party members. Second, the government is encouraged to introduce policies to attract young college students, urban promising youth and entrepreneurs, as well as professional and technical personnel to the grassroots, and actively develop the quantity and quality of resource factors to provide the soil for creating wealth for innovative awareness.



### 1.3. Integration of the three governance systems

In rural governance, we should build a modern rural governance system that combines autonomy, rule by law and rule by virtue. First, it is necessary to improve and innovate the system and mechanism of villagers' self-governance, unswervingly rely on various forms of villagers' representative meetings, villagers' committees and villagers' councils to form a villager's own decision-making mechanism of civil non-governmental, civil civil management and civil civil decision, and cultivate the enthusiasm and initiative of the masses to participate in rural social development affairs by guiding various rural organizations and villagers to participate in rural social development affairs in an orderly manner. We will improve farmers' ability to manage and serve themselves. Second, it is necessary to enhance the rule of law level of rural governance, strengthen the authoritative status of law in agricultural support and protection, rural infrastructure construction, agricultural ecological protection, protection of farmers and farmers' rights and interests, and maintenance of rural market order, guide villagers to effectively improve their legal awareness and law-abiding quality, and promote the construction of safe villages. The third is to strengthen the construction of moral governance, China's history has paid attention to "moral education", through example demonstration and typical guidance, constantly strengthen the construction of villagers' moral norms, create a good environment for rural moral governance, solve the problem of rule of law and autonomy, achieve an effective balance of autonomy, rule of law and moral governance, and lay a solid foundation for the modernization of rural governance.

## 2. X Community development overview

The necessity of rural governance

X community is south of the county economic development zone, north of Beijing-Guangzhou railway, permanent population of more than 2000 people, household population of 1600 people, more than 700 acres of farmland, 60 party members, 25 villagers representatives. Since 2010, it has lasted 4 years to build 120 households in a single courtyard, 6 small high-rise buildings with 11 floors, which can accommodate 572 villagers, complete supporting projects, public service facilities, clean energy penetration rate of 100%, and green area of more than 50% of the beautiful village. It has won the national forest village, the national comprehensive disaster reduction demonstration community, and the provincial advanced grass-roots Party organization.

Run through the "one red line" and strengthen the governance pattern. The Party branch of X community regards strengthening party organization construction as a red line running through grassroots governance, forming a "1+N" working model of party building. First, create an atmosphere around party building. Through the "village road naming", "Party building corridor" and other forms, to create a strong atmosphere of party building inside and outside the village. The second is to sharpen the party spirit. Party members wear the party emblem "bright identity", and implement the joint household system of party members. Third, we need to establish a mechanism to ensure concrete results. Establish a long-term mechanism for the management of party organizations. Quantification of the work, the implementation of the percentage system assessment, the formulation of qualified party member standards and party member points management mechanism.

Create "three teams" and unite for the people. Learn from the "Fengqiao experience", based on the actual situation of the village, and innovate the establishment of the Party and mass service center + grid + information comprehensive management carrier. The Party and mass service center will be built into a "gathering place" for government affairs, law, spearhead, social, cultural and sports resources that serve the people; Establish a "1+1+N" governance grid. "1" is the party branch, "1 village cadre and village police", "N" is the party member and village representative.

Strengthen the "five mechanisms" and establish a governance system. X community explored "five mechanisms" and built a closed-loop governance system. Democratic decision-making mechanism. Promote the "democratic consultation" decision-making mechanism, and promote the work through six steps: proposal, consultation, decision-making, implementation, supervision and feedback. Village representatives visit the contracted farmers every month, report the problems collected, the party branch sorts out the information, simple problems, the village two committees discuss and deal with, the proposal of major issues, and start the "four discussions and two public". Comprehensive governance mechanism. Build a "dual network" comprehensive governance mechanism of "grid + network" to achieve a "two-way road" of "online and offline" smooth governance. There is a "three-level grid" below the line to serve the masses "face to face"; In the face of different



contradictions and demands of the masses, give full play to the advantages of civil mediators, village cadres, and village police (political and legal village heads). Service mechanism for the people. Giving priority to serving the people, we will establish service centers for the convenience of the people, stations for the practice of civilization in the new era, and cultural service stations. Cultural construction mechanism. Build a mechanism for co-education, co-construction and shared culture construction, forming a “1+6+N” model, “1” is the party organization to play a leading role, “6” is the formation of six cultural societies in the village, “N” is the organization to participate in a number of cultural exchanges and interaction activities inside and outside the village. Effective monitoring mechanism. Village affairs supervision committees have been set up to supervise the whole process of village affairs. Establish a village-level “small and micro power” operation mechanism, through the meeting, publicity bar, smart platform “three open”, upload the village accounts and other open content on the smart platform, so that villagers can view the village affairs, finance and other open content through the Internet and TV in real time.

### **3. Countermeasures and suggestions to improve the level of grass-roots governance**

#### **3.1. Select a strong village (community) “two committees” team**

Solving the problem of weak and lax party organizations at the village level and building a strong and powerful village-level leadership can promote the comprehensive progress of grass-roots party organizations, and gather the wisdom and strength of the majority of Party members and cadres into the vivid practice of promoting rural revitalization. First, it is necessary to strictly control the “entrance”, boldly use outstanding talents, whether the party members can lead the masses to get rich as an important yardstick for selecting the village Party branch secretary, and elect those party members with high quality, strong ability and mass support as “leading geese” to improve the mass recognition and collective quality of the village Party branch secretary. The second is to dredging the “exit”, properly deal with some village cadres who are not at ease with their own work and the masses are not satisfied, enhance the crisis awareness of village cadres, and break the illusion that “village cadres have no one to do except me”.

#### **3.2. In-depth implementation of the “villager representative proposal system”**

Adhere to the village party branch as the core, in-depth excavation of the “double household” role of villagers’ representatives and party members, the “double household” system to form a harmonious “link” between cadres and masses, and improve the governance ability of the “good strategy”. Give full play to the role of the “monthly meeting” village level discussion platform, constantly standardize the meeting process, strengthen daily supervision, sum up advanced experience, and constantly improve the efficiency of rural governance.

#### **3.3. Firmly establish the work orientation of focusing on the grassroots and the foundation**

Give full play to the mechanism advantages of “Party members +” and rural points management, actively carry out the creation of “five good” township Party committees (good leadership, good party members and cadres, good operating mechanism, good work performance, and good feedback from the masses), continue to carry out the “five star branch” evaluation, and make good use of “five in one batch” (from the existing “two committee” members to raise a batch, We will recruit a number of people from migrant workers and businessmen, a number of retired cadres and teachers, a number of veterans, and a number of Party members and cadres from government organs), and strengthen and adjust the team of excellent Party branch secretaries.

#### **3.4. We will explore new models of governance**

Actively explore the “135-5” work method in Chaoyang community, standardize grassroots small and micro power, standardize village collective economic contracts, and explore the “1+5” rural governance model with “villager representative proposal system” as the main line. “1” is to hold a “monthly meeting”. Presided over by the village Party organization secretary, fixed 1 day a month, held a “monthly regular meeting”, township village cadres, village cadres, “two committees” cadres, all party members, representatives of the villagers to participate. Mainly around the villager representatives submitted and party branch proposals, village cadres report the implementation of the work, the disclosure of financial revenues and expenditures in the month, on-site face-to-face comments and suggestions, learning superior documents

or party lessons and other content. “5” means “five-step working method”. It is mainly composed of “proposal, consultation, decision-making, implementation and supervision” of proposals. Through the special promotion action of “villager representative proposal system”, 178 administrative villages in the county have been fully implemented, and remarkable results have been achieved.

## References

[1]Lu Wei. Research on problems and Countermeasures of rural governance of R town in D County from the perspective of “Three governance integration” [D]. Sichuan normal university, 2022. DOI: 10.27347 /, dc nki. Gssdu. 2022.001227

[2]Wang Yilin. Under the background of rural governance research [D]. Rural grass-root party construction in jiangsu university, 2022. The DOI: 10.27170 /, dc nki. Gjsuu. 2022.001739.

[3]Xie Shangguo, Quan Liping, PENG Zhen. Practice and Development of “Three governance combination” in rural minority areas: A case study of Rural governance in Guangxi [J]. Guangxi Ethnic Studies,2022,No.167(05):37-44.

# Special Group Service Standardization Construction in Natural Museum

Jiyuan Qiu<sup>1</sup>, Yuhua Hu<sup>1</sup>, Shuai Qin<sup>2</sup>, Meng Cheng<sup>2</sup>

1.China Jiliang University, Hangzhou 310018, China

2.Yantai Urban Planning Exhibition Hall (Yantai Museum of Natural History), Yantai 264000, China

---

**Abstract:** This article discusses the standardization of services for special groups in natural museums. We have analyzed the importance of providing standardized services for special groups, reviewed the current status of special group services, and pointed out the main challenges faced. Taking the British Museum as an example, we introduced its significant achievements in terms of service equality, accessible physical environment design, and intellectual accessibility measures. By drawing on international advanced experience and combining with the actual situation in China, we propose a framework for building a standardized system of special group services, including standardization of service content, methods, and quality. In addition, this article proposes implementation strategies and safeguard measures, such as strengthening personnel training, developing standardized service processes, establishing an evaluation index system, and cooperation mechanisms. The aim is to improve the quality of natural museum services and ensure the basic cultural rights and interests of special groups.

**Keywords:** Natural Museum; Special Group Service; Standardization System Construction

---

## 1. Introduction

With the development of society and technological progress, the public's demand for scientific culture has increased. Natural museums, as important places to disseminate scientific culture knowledge and improve public scientific literacy, have a crucial mission to undertake. However, when providing services to special groups (such as elderly people, disabled people, children, etc.), there is a lack of uniform standards, and the quality of service varies, making it difficult to meet their special needs. Research in the museum industry in China is still in its early stages in terms of serving special groups, with relatively slow progress and the absence of a systematic and standardized service model. This not only impedes the rights of special groups to acquire scientific and cultural knowledge, but also restricts the popular science education function of natural museums. Therefore, standardizing research on special group services in natural museums has important practical and theoretical value.

## 2. Analysis of Current Situation and Challenges of Special Group Services

The Public Cultural Services Security Law of the People's Republic of China has unequivocally stated that people's governments at all levels must offer tailored public cultural services to distinct groups, encompassing minors, the elderly, the physically challenged, and the transient populace. Despite this, the current research on special group services within domestic museum circles remains in its nascent stage, characterized by a constrained range of service offerings such as complimentary admissions, sign language interpretation, and accessibility enhancements for wheelchair users. Educational initiatives tailored to these special groups are conspicuously scarce, and there is a dearth of widely recognized special education brands and models. Therefore, the augmentation of standardized research on special group services in the realm of science popularization education in natural museums has become increasingly necessary and urgent. Currently, although some natural museums have made some efforts in special group services, they still face many problems and challenges as a whole.

Firstly, it must be acknowledged that the current service content falls short in terms of both diversity and profundity. The majority of educational programs for special populations in natural museums remain rudimentary, offering merely free admission and sign language interpretation, without venturing into more thorough and elaborate science popularization content. This impediment hinders special populations from gaining a richer and more inspiring intellectual journey during their visits.

Secondly, the service methods are relatively traditional and have not fully utilized modern technological means to enhance service effectiveness. This to some extent limits the innovation and attractiveness of the services, making it difficult to meet the needs of special pop-

ulations for diversified and personalized services.

Thirdly, natural museums have not established a sound standardization system in science popularization for special populations. Due to a lack of uniform service processes and management norms, there may be significant differences and uncertainties in providing services between different museums. This not only affects the stability of service quality, but also increases the inconvenience and distress of special populations during their visits.

Finally, the scarcity of professional talents is also an important factor restricting the development of special population services. Currently, there is a relative shortage of professional talent reserves in related fields, making it difficult for natural museums to provide services for special populations at a professional and efficient level.

### **3. Borrowing International Advanced Experience**

From an international perspective, many museums in developed countries have accumulated rich experience in the field of special population services. For example, some museums in the UK focus on providing multi-sensory experiences, allowing special populations to fully perceive and understand exhibition content through various methods such as touch, hearing, and smell. Some museums in the United States focus on using modern technology to enhance service effectiveness, such as developing exclusive apps for special populations to provide convenient guided tours and interactive experiences.<sup>[1]</sup>

The British Museum actively addresses the needs of special populations. At the same time, the museum also pays attention to the accessibility design of the physical environment, including setting clear road signs, providing appropriate height interpretation signs, and optimizing the accessibility facilities of restaurants and restrooms, so as to ensure that special populations can easily and conveniently visit the museum. In addition, the British Museum actively utilizes braille services, haptic videos, sign language services, and auditory description devices, among others, to help special populations better understand and experience exhibition content. These measures not only enhance the visitor experience for special populations, but also fully reflect the museum's concern and respect for their needs. In terms of emotional and attitude barriers, the British Museum also excels. It provides rich and comprehensive information services, offers friendly and patient service attitudes to every visitor, and maintains a dedicated accessibility contact service window to ensure that special populations feel fully respected and cared for during their visit.

## **4. Building a Standardized System for Special Group Services**

### **4.1 Standardizing Service Content**

Based on the needs and characteristics of special groups, targeted science and education service content including exhibition design, interpretation services, and interactive experiences should be developed. For example, voice guided tours should be provided for visually impaired individuals, and written explanations should be provided for hearing-impaired individuals, etc. The service content should meet the objectives of science education while meeting the personalized needs of special groups.

### **4.2 Standardizing Service Delivery**

First, professional guided tour services should be provided, including dedicated tour guides and accessible tour facilities for special groups, to ensure that special groups can easily visit and obtain the necessary information. Second, necessary auxiliary devices should be provided for special groups, such as magnifying glasses, hearing aids, wheelchairs, etc., to help them better visit and learn, and improve their visit experience.

### **4.3 Standardizing Service Quality**

A unified evaluation system for service quality should be established to supervise and evaluate the service process and results. The service quality should be monitored and evaluated through a combination of regular inspections and unannounced spot checks to ensure that the service quality meets the predetermined standards and continuously optimized and improved.

## 5. Implementation Strategies and Safeguards

To improve the quality of science popularization education services provided by natural museums, we can promote standardization construction in the following ways:

### 5.1 Strengthen personnel training

Strengthen the museum staff's understanding and training of standardization for special population services, improve their professional literacy and service level. To ensure accessibility, museums should establish a special accessibility department or dedicated personnel. They will coordinate work among departments to ensure that the services fully consider the feelings of people with disabilities.

### 5.2 Develop standardized service processes

Develop detailed science popularization education service processes based on the needs and characteristics of special populations<sup>[2]</sup>. Include regulations on service content, service methods, service times, and other aspects to ensure the standardization and consistency of the service.

### 5.3 Establish an evaluation index system

Borrowing international advanced experience and combining actual domestic conditions, establish an evaluation index system suitable for science popularization education in natural museums. Through regular evaluation and improvement of service quality, adjust and improve according to actual conditions to ensure that it provides high-quality science popularization education services for special populations in a sustained and effective manner. Third-party evaluation agencies can be introduced to ensure the fairness and accuracy of evaluation results.

### 5.4 Establish a cooperation mechanism

Strengthen cooperation and communication with other museums, relevant institutions, and special population organizations to jointly promote the development of standardization for special population services.

## 6. Conclusion

The standardization of science popularization services for special groups in natural museum education is a significant and valuable topic that requires the joint efforts of museum managers, experts and scholars, as well as the public. By drawing on international advanced experience and combining it with the actual situation in China, we can establish a sound standardization system and put it into practice, which not only improves the service quality of science popularization education in natural museums, but also better safeguards the basic cultural rights and interests of special group<sup>[3]</sup>.

## References

- [1] Kharat S , Nagarkar S , Panage B .Information consolidation and repackaging for augmented reality library service: a special reference to the Layar app[J].Information Discovery and Delivery, 2023.DOI:10.1108/idd-03-2022-0022.
- [2] Jagadeesan D , Chinnadurai P .SERVQUAL of Private Sector Banks: A Study with Special Reference to Tamilnadu[J].Longdom Publishing SL, 2016(2).
- [3] Peng L , Feng B , Tang D ,et al.Approaches on improving residents electronic health record management implementation[C]//Journal of Physics Conference Series.IOP Publishing Ltd, 2019:032010.DOI:10.1088/1742-6596/1168/3/032010.

# An Analysis of Ingratiating Discourse in Social Interaction

Zheng Shao

Nanjing University of Posts and Telecommunications, Nanjing210023, China

---

**Abstract:** Ingratiating discourse is a social phenomenon that appears under the background of social transformation and new network interpersonal relationship. It is mainly manifested in several forms, such as modal particles, exclamation mark, and emoticons, which reflect people's discourse carnival under social needs and network memes under digital living situations. In this paper, I explore the expression of ingratiating discourse in social activities. The paper mainly reveals the cases and reasons of ingratiating discourse, the differences between different genders in the use of ingratiating discourse.

**Keywords:** Ingratiating Discourse; Social Interactions; Reasons; Gender Differences

---

## 1. Introduction

Ingratiating discourse in social interaction refers to the phenomenon that in real life or online social networking, in order to express their politeness and kindness, individuals tend to strengthen the modal particle or express something with more emojis online to make words more friendly and amiable. Nowadays, a growing number of people use a euphemistic way of speaking or add some friendly modal particle at the end of their communication in real life. In the meantime, people also consciously or unconsciously use many lovely and friendly modal particle to express themselves online with emojis and exclamation point in social media.

## 2. Literature Review

Ingratiating discourse is the product of the modern social interaction. No matter in real life communication, or online social chat, ingratiating words appear frequently in our discourse expression. This paper aims to explore the reasons and gender differences behind the ingratiating discourse.

Miao Xiaowen and Ye Lixia (2021) studied the relationship between ingratiating discourse posture and interpersonal relationship.<sup>[1]</sup> Their methodology has positive impact on my research methodology. In order to study the part of differences in the use of ingratiating discourse between different genders, I collected data through interviews based on the methods of these two scholars.

Pu Ping and Chen Qian (2024) studied ingratiating discourse generated in digital platforms. In addition, this article introduces some specific cases of ingratiating discourse. Many people do not use "ok" when replying to others, but use "okk", which looks more friendly.<sup>[2]</sup> The example inspired me to demonstrated the use of ingratiating discourse in real and online social interactions.

## 3. Methodology

### 3.1 Literature Research Method

In the research on the ingratiating discourse in social interaction, firstly, literature related to ingratiating discourse is collected by searching keywords related to this research in major Internet literature databases and data sharing platforms (such as CNKI, VIP). Secondly, I also collected literature related to this research in various offline libraries and other places.

### 3.2 Way of Qualitative Analysis

#### 3.2.1 Survey

A total of 350 college students in Nanjing were randomly selected, 30 invalid interviews were eliminated, and 320 valid interviews were obtained. The average age of the participants was about 21. Among them, 45 percent were males and 55 percent were females.

#### 3.2.2 Measure

Interviews on the use of ingratiating words in social interaction: In ingratiating speech, discourse markers such as "ne," "ya," and "hey"

in Chinese are typically used to soften language expression and enhance affinity, serving as buffers and regulators. Research indicates that these linguistic elements can reduce confrontation in communication, increasing acceptance and intimacy between interlocutors. We have designed the following three directions for interview items:

(1) Do you often use pleasing speech markers, such as “ne,” “ya,” “hey,” etc., in your daily conversations? A. Yes B. No

(2) Do you frequently use friendly emojis or punctuation marks, such as smiley emojis or exclamation points, in your online social interactions? A. Yes B. No

(3) Why do you use such expressions?

A. To express politeness B. To leave a friendly impression on others C. Out of habit

Question	Answer	Total	Male	Female
Do you often use polite expressions in daily communication, such as “ne”, “ya”, “hey”, etc.?	Yes	190	80	110
	No	130	60	70
Do you often use friendly emojis or punctuation in online social interactions? Such as smiley emojis, exclamation marks.	Yes	220	70	150
	No	100	74	26
Why do you use such expressions?	To express politeness	72	28	44
	To leave a friendly impression	210	104	106
	Habit	38	12	26

### 3.2.3 Data Processing

The collected answers data were processed and analyzed using Python. The chi-square test of independence was employed. The chi-square test of independence effectively determines whether there is an association between two categorical variables by comparing the differences between observed and expected frequencies. If the statistic exceeds the critical value, it indicates a significant association between the two variables; otherwise, it indicates no significant association.

$$\chi^2 = \sum \frac{(O_{ij} - E_{ij})^2}{E_{ij}}$$

## 4. Analysis

### 4.1 Instances and Reasons

#### 4.1.1 Obedience, Cater and Giving

In social activities, some ingratiating discourse are often reflected as obedience, cater and giving. In many cases, when faced with a request from others, people tend to say yes with a relaxed tone, even if they are not willing to. Around our lives, some college students do not want to participate in activities, but they often hide their inner reluctance and say to the person in charge of the activity, “Of course I will go. I am very happy to participate!” This is a typical way of ingratiating discourse. Therefore, in discourse communication, their ways of communication are often submissive and accommodating. In terms of specific social actions, they will take the initiative to meet the needs of others and sacrifice themselves.

#### 4.1.2 Lack of Independent Thinking and Independent Thinking Ability

In social situations, some individuals are always more willing to be a listener and a doer. They seem to suppress the ability to express ideas when communicating in discourse. When their reason conflicts with their tendency to conform to others, they get into psychological conflict. Their words are usually “OK”, “I agree”, etc., giving people an impression of good temper and friendliness. For example, at a gathering with old friends, when other people ask which restaurant they want to eat, this kind of people do not participate in the discussion or give own opinions. Until the decision is made, they will say “OK, do what you want. This restaurant looks good.” The fact is that these people tend to come across as easy-going and approachable, however, their own ability to think independently and express ideas also gradually

weaken.

#### 4.1.3 Repression of Critical Discourse

Another form of ingratiating discourse is actually silence and the inability to use critical language. For instance, in group work or discussions, when their opinions conflict with others, they tend to remain silent or express their concurrence. In online group chat discussions, they like lurking in the group chat and do not express their opinions. Sometimes, they also choose to send a cute emoji of a nod or OK gesture to show their approval. Whether in real or online networking, such people are often silent or say “no” even when others explicitly ask if they have any questions or suggestions.

#### 4.1.4 Reasons

Interpersonal withdrawal and avoidance. People who often use ingratiating discourse tend to grow up in a more controlling environment. In their family environment, the parents of such people will be strict and even critical. They often project that those around them will view them in the same critical light as their parents, which can trigger anxiety. In this case, they tend to focus on pleasantries in their speech expression, and always use polite and friendly ways when talking or chatting online.

Accumulation and processing of negative emotions. First of all, people who use ingratiating discourse often doubt whether they are really liked by others, and need to constantly confirm. Secondly, due to the inequality of the relationship and the inferiority, such people tend to have a lot of shame at the subconscious level, and hate for the object of ingratiation. Aware that these feelings of shame and hate are uncomfortable and dangerous, they tend to suppress these feelings. In order to cope with negative emotions, they need to mobilize psychological defense mechanisms, including fantasy and denial.

The suppression of one’s own personality. At online social events, social media has gradually improved and become the main carrier of people’s social communication. However, the alienation of individuals in the network space leads to the strangeness and alienation between subjects, which causes various restrictions and barriers for the network virtual performance. In order to eliminate strangeness and distance and achieve the purpose of quickly establishing contact with others, people often spend great effort in choosing words and sentences when communicating, and sometimes simulate interactive scenes in their hearts, and speak in a tone and way that the other party can accept happily.<sup>[3]</sup>

## 4.2 Research Gender Differences of Ingratiating Discourse Expression

Among the interviews of 350 college students, 320 interviews are valid. Students were randomly interviewed by academic unit to answer the questions. We summarize and calculate the chi-square values for all cells, as shown in the table below. The formula for calculating the degrees of freedom is: Degrees of freedom = (number of rows - 1) × (number of columns - 1) = (7 - 1) × (2 - 1) = 6

At a significance level of  $\alpha = 0.05$ , the critical value for 6 degrees of freedom is 12.59. The calculated chi-square statistic is 56.39, which is much greater than the critical value of 12.59. Therefore, we reject the null hypothesis and conclude that there is a significant association between gender and response options. Through this statistical analysis, we can be 95% confident that gender indeed has a significant impact on the survey results, indicating that this influence is not due to chance. This result tells us that this significant association indicates that when designing and interpreting survey results, we need to consider the impact of gender factors.

#### Discussion and Conclusion

The paper focuses on the analysis of the ingratiating discourse in social interaction. The main research methodologies of this research are literature research method and way of qualitative analysis. The key findings of this paper are the reasons, differences between different genders of ingratiating discourse.

To sum up, this paper reveals that there are differences in the use of ingratiating discourse by different genders. In social communication, there are only disguised politeness and friendliness, but no real feelings are limited and meaningless. Being reasonably authentic and self-worth, and trying to be more authentic in our social interactions with others, can build truly healthy and meaningful relationships.

## References

[1] MiaoXiaoWen, and Li Xia ye. “please type communication attitude and college freshmen interpersonal relationship: pain show mediation role.” journal of Huizhou university, 41.01 (2021) : 118-122. The doi: 10.16778 / j.carol carroll nki. 1671-5934.2021.01.021.



[2] Pu Ping, and Chen Qian. “” word please syndrome” : the digital communication practice of emotion research. “the future spread of 31.01 (2024) : 76-84. The doi: 10.13628 / j.carol carroll nki ZJCMXB. 2024.01.012.

[3] Sun Zhijie, Xu Gaoyong. Network representation, reality attribution and social alienation of “text-pleasing syndrome” [J]. New Media Research, 2019,9(02):98-101.

[4] Wu Houjin.” Interpreting the phenomenon of “text-pleasing syndrome” from the perspective of network communication.” Advances in Psychology 13 (2023): 3251.

[5] Ma Xiaohui.” An Analysis of College Students’ ingratiating Interpersonal Relationship Model.” Education and Teaching Forum (2020).

### **About the author:**

Zheng Shao, female, Han nationality, Nanjing, Jiangsu, undergraduate, Linguistics, Nanjing University of Posts and Telecommunications

# Analysis of the Impact of Further Increasing the Policy of Value Added Tax End of Period Deduction and Refund on the Environment of Tax Enterprises

Jiaqun Chen

China Jiliang University, Hangzhou 310000, China

---

**Abstract:** Further expanding the scope of the leave for tax rebates, increase enterprise capital circulation, reducing the pressure of corporate lending and equilibrium of supply and demand to meet the new development. At the same time, conduct an audit of the non-standard enterprise accounts, sound an alarm bell on the enterprise account, standardize the enterprise accounts, improve the accounting access threshold, and promote the harmonious growth of tax revenue and enterprise activity.

**Keywords:** Tax Rebate; Financial Policy; Check and Pay Taxes

---

## 1. The meaning of retained tax refund and the changes made by the new policy

### 1.1. Reasons for tax refund retention

The retained tax amount refers to the difference between the current output tax amount of an enterprise and the input tax amount, indicating the existence of input tax amounts that have been certified but not yet deducted by the enterprise.

Retained tax refund, as the name suggests, is a tax refund for the retained (input) tax amount.

This policy is exclusive to general taxpayers and cannot be enjoyed by small-scale taxpayers, as small-scale taxpayers pay value-added tax based on the collection rate, while general taxpayers pay taxes based on the algorithm of subtracting input tax from output tax.

The value-added tax implements a chain deduction mechanism: the taxable amount equals the current output tax amount minus the current input tax amount.<sup>[1]</sup> Among them, the output corresponds to the revenue end, and the input corresponds to the cost end. In theory, the output tax amount of value-added tax is generally greater than the input tax amount. But there are some situations, such as the inconsistency between the input tax and output tax of taxpayers in terms of time, such as centralized procurement of raw materials and inventory, which have not yet fully realized sales; During the investment period, there is a large amount of procurement of machinery and equipment, but there is still a lack of income, which will result in the output tax amount being less than the input tax amount. In addition, in the case of multiple tax rates (13%, 9%, 6%, zero tax rate) coexisting, if the applicable tax rate for sales is lower than the applicable tax rate for input, it will also form a retained tax amount.

For example, the instruments and equipment required for precision machining in manufacturing enterprises are extremely expensive, and the input tax pressure is extremely high. It takes a considerable amount of time to gradually release the output. The portion of input tax that is retained for deduction in the account is called the retained tax amount, which is retained for future deduction of input tax. The retained tax amount actually squeezes out the funds of the enterprise, which is a huge pressure on the cash flow of enterprises with insufficient cash flow.

There are two ways to handle the deferred tax at the end of the period: one is to carry it forward to the next period for further deduction, and the other is to directly refund the deferred tax if certain conditions are met. If the tax refund is retained, the enterprise can immediately receive a sum of funds for fund circulation, reducing borrowing pressure.

### 1.2. Comparison of New and Old Policies for Tax Deduction and Refund

The characteristic of the new policy of tax retention and refund is to focus on small and micro enterprises and key supporting industries; Incremental allowance and stock allowance are refunded together; Institutional, one-time, and phased arrangements should be implemented simultaneously. There are three “upgrades”:

On the basis of increment, stock tax has also been refunded. The retained tax refunds generated after April 2019 are incremental retained tax refunds, and vice versa is the stock retained tax policy. The old policy only refunded the incremental portion of retained tax credits

The second is early refund. The old policy of value-added tax refund is to deduct the input from the output at the time of tax payment, and refund the tax based on the difference. The new policy is called “purchase tax refund”, which means that the difference between the output tax and input tax will be refunded after the sales are completed. Once the equipment is purchased, this part of the input tax can be refunded. This minimizes the time it takes for value-added tax to occupy funds.

The third is to expand the scope of application and increase the refund ratio. The old policy only provided a 100% tax refund for advanced manufacturing enterprises, and a 60% refund for other enterprises and small and micro enterprises. The new policy includes a 100% refund for all medium-sized enterprises and large enterprises in six industries, including small and micro enterprises and manufacturing. The support is very strong.

## **2. Retained tax refund is a financial policy**

### **2.1. Retaining tax refunds reduces the financial flow pressure on enterprises**

Before the implementation of the value-added tax deduction and refund policy, enterprises could only gradually offset the output tax generated by the retained tax amount, and this part of the funds was occupied, thereby increasing the burden on the enterprise. After implementing the retention and refund of taxes, the incremental retention and refund of business will be fully refunded on a monthly basis, greatly alleviating the financial flow pressure on enterprises.

### **2.2. Tax rebates can drive demand and supply towards a new equilibrium state**

Enterprises order production based on sales and purchase based on production. The accumulation of a large amount of inventory before the implementation of policies can easily generate a large amount of retained tax credits. Withholding tax refunds can imply refunds that encourage companies to purchase more raw materials. Purchasing more raw materials is beneficial for reducing the purchase price, prolonging the supplier’s account period, reducing overall costs, and benefiting upstream enterprises. The increased sales revenue is beneficial for stabilizing employment, restoring or expanding production. Thus driving the entire industry chain. This will promote the restoration of production and stable employment, drive the development of demand and supply towards a new equilibrium, and help the economy recover better and faster.

### **2.3. The source of funds for withholding tax refunds**

Value added tax belongs to the shared tax category between local and central governments. The value-added tax paid is 50% from the central government and 50% from the local government. And all the tax refunds for this time come from the central government. The central government bears the amount originally issued by the local government. This greatly alleviated the economic pressure on local governments.

### **2.4. Priority of retained tax refunds**

Firstly, priority will be given to small and micro enterprises for tax retention and refund. The stock tax retention and refund of small and micro enterprises will be refunded in full by the end of June, and the incremental tax retention and refund will be fully refunded.

Priority will be given to the full refund of existing allowances, while the full refund of incremental allowances will be given. The portion of funds that previously formed allowances will be directly invested in the daily turnover of small and micro enterprises, which essentially alleviates the financial pressure on them.

Small and micro enterprises contribute 80% of employment and 50% of taxes, allowing them to turn around. When these enterprises turn around, employment and the economy will both improve, which will be beneficial for the recovery and growth of production and consumption.

The second is to focus on supporting the manufacturing industry and other industries with retained tax refunds, comprehensively

solving the problems of retained tax refunds in six major industries: manufacturing, scientific research and technical services, ecological protection, electricity, heat, gas and water production and supply, transportation, software and information technology services. The above six industries are closely related to people's livelihood

So, the essence of retained tax refunds is financial instruments.

### 3. Reason analysis for not eligible for tax refund

For the period of March 2022, the author inquired and summarized the reasons why enterprises in a certain county or district are unwilling to refund taxes. The main reasons are as follows:

The reason why it is expected that the incremental retained tax amount will be quickly digested in the near future is because companies have purchased a large number of goods in a short period of time but have not yet sold or sold but not invoiced, but are able to sell and recover the payment in a short period of time. In the case of abundant financial resources, some corporate accountants believe that tax refunds will increase the accounting burden and are unwilling to apply for them due to the inconvenience. The same reason is that the refundable amount is relatively small.

When enterprises engage in export business, exporting to avoid value-added tax can lead to a large amount of retained tax credits. Taxpayers can choose to retain or exempt tax refunds, both of which are essentially refunds of input tax. But the retention of tax refunds only temporarily changes the occupation time of input tax, and will not lead to a decrease in the overall value-added tax burden. And exemption from offset and refund refers to the actual refund of all or part of the input tax borne by exported goods or services in the domestic production process. Can achieve the effect of reducing the actual value-added tax burden on exported goods or services.<sup>[2]</sup>

Some enterprises lack solid accounting knowledge and there are declaration errors. For example, the input tax amount of tax-free products cannot be deducted. If the enterprise is engaged in the sales of agricultural products, this is a tax-free project, and the input tax amount belonging to it cannot be deducted. Therefore, the input tax amount must be transferred out, so the actual retained tax amount does not exist.

Withholding tax refunds can easily lead to tax evasion and fraud. The tax department has increased its review efforts in the subsequent review process to prevent taxpayers from evading or defrauding taxes. Some enterprises have tax evasion issues such as issuing false invoices and concealing income. They are afraid of being reviewed by the tax authorities after applying for tax refunds, so they refuse to withhold tax refunds.<sup>[3]</sup>

### 4. Conclusion

Previously, there was a lack of unified tax system, low compliance with corporate tax laws, and outdated regulatory measures in China. With the completion of the business tax reform and value-added tax reform, regulatory measures such as the fourth phase of the Golden Tax Project and the real name tax system have been continuously improved, and false invoicing has been greatly curbed. The policy of retaining and offsetting tax refunds is also forcing tax authorities to increase their regulatory efforts, standardize accounting information for enterprises, and create a better tax enterprise environment. The liquidity of 4 trillion yuan has gradually expanded from advanced manufacturing to all fields. For formal enterprises, the larger the initial investment, the more tax refunds they receive, and the stronger the liquidity of supplementary funds. In the context of economic downturn, it can significantly alleviate the operational situation of enterprises.

### References

- [1] Xu Ningyu, Lao Xiaofeng, Wang Pingping Complete Collection of Local Taxation Policies in Zhejiang Province, Goods and Services Division (2017 Edition) [M]. Zhejiang: Zhejiang Provincial Local Taxation Bureau 56/2017
- [2] Huang Pingshui, Zhu Yinghui, Hu Xiaoming, etc Tax Policy Business Manual Export Tax Refund Volume (2020 Edition) [M]. Zhejiang: State Administration of Taxation Zhejiang Provincial Taxation Bureau December 12th, 2020
- [3] Edited by Yang Qianzi, Laws Related to Tax Related Services (Volume 1) [M] Beijing: Beijing Science and Technology Press, 2021, 221

# Analysis of the Impact of Bai Language on English Pronunciation

Qi Chen

Yunnan University, Kunming650504, China

---

**Abstract:** The Bai ethnic group in China speaks Bai as their native tongue. The Bai are an ethnic group with a rich history and culture. In Dali Bai Autonomous Prefecture, the Bai are particularly prevalent in the ethnic Bai villages of the county and lower counties, where they frequently utilize the Bai language for daily communication. However, because their daily language is the first language that native Bai children are exposed to after birth, they do not start learning Chinese until they are in kindergarten (under the instruction of Chinese teachers who have strong Bai characteristics), and they do not start learning English until middle school. For students of Bai, this means that they intuitively pick up the languages of Bai and Chinese from their surroundings, but English is learned later through official schooling.

The behaviorist theory holds that existing habits have an impact on the development of new ones. Children in Bai communities learn Bai as their first language, which conflicts with Mandarin and other languages. “Everyone generally receives new speech through the sounds of their own language phonologically (Sun,2004).” “People who study a foreign language like Chinese will unavoidably be influenced by their original tongue’s pronunciation tendencies to some level, and they frequently unwittingly transfer such habits to their foreign language.” Due to the lack of a language environment similar to that experienced when learning a native language, learners’ native thinking that has been implanted in the brain when learning a foreign language may impede the efficient development of foreign language acquisition. When learners come into contact with foreign languages, their mother tongue system has been established and native thinking habits have been formed. Therefore, it is crucial for local students to learn English fluently to investigate the impact of the phonetics of Bai language on English pronunciation acquisition.

**Keywords:** Bai Language; English Pronunciation; Native Tongue

---

## 1. The phonology of English

There are 48 phonemes in English, including 20 vowels, 24 consonants, and 4 consonant conjunctions.

### 1.1. English Vowel

English vowels have 12 monograms and 8 diphthongs. There are three categories according to the position of the tongue, the height of the lower jaw (the opening and closing of the mouth), and the shape of the lips when pronounced.

Among the 12 monophonics, according to phonetic pronunciation, it can be divided into two categories: long vowels and short vowels; According to the difference between front, middle, posterior and high and low of the tongue, it can be divided into three categories: front vowel, central vowel and back vowel.

### 1.2. English Consonant

The pronunciation of consonants is characterized by some degree of obstruction of the airflow during pronunciation. There are 24 English consonants, including two semivowels. Consonants can be classified in different ways. According to the way in which they form obstruction when pronounced, they can be divided into plosives, fricatives, nasals, lateral tongues, glottis, and semivowels.

According to the obstruction organ part formed during pronunciation, it can be divided into bilabial, labiodental, etc.

According to whether the vocal cords vibrate during pronunciation, it can be divided into voiceless consonants and voiced consonants.

## 2. The phonology of Bai Language

### 2.1. Initials

There are 27 initials in the vernacular, arranged according to the places of articulation (Li,2013).

Introduction:

- (1) No initial consonant clusters.
- (2) Zero initial consonant with a slight glottal stop.
- (3) There is a voicing between the plosive and the affricate, so, [b]、 [d]、 [dz]、 [g] are as independent phonemes.

### 2.2. Vowel

There are 20 vowels in the Bai language, which are divided into two categories: single vowels and compound vowels. Among them, there are 8 single vowels and 12 compound vowels.

### 2.3. Syllable Type

By analyzing syllables from different angles, different types of syllables can be divided. The syllable types of Bai language can be analyzed from two aspects: the nature of syllable endings and the syllable structure types composed of meta-consonants.

#### (1) Open Syllable

The syllables of Bai language all end in vowels, and therefore belong to the open syllables in syllable types. Although white language also has nasal phonemes such as [m] [n] [ŋ], the position of these phonemes is fixed in the formation of syllables, only at the beginning of the syllable.

#### (2) Syllable Structure

From the perspective of syllable structure types composed of meta-consonants, there are four syllable structure types in the Bai language. In her research, Li Juan concluded that the syllable structure of the Bai language has the following characteristics: The syllable structure is simple, with only four structure types: Each syllable has vowels; vowels occupy an obvious advantage in the syllabic structure of the white language; no syllable has at least one vowel, at most two; Syllables can be without consonants but not without vowels and tones, and each syllable has a fixed tone.

## 3. Phonemic Comparison of English and Bai Languages

From the perspective of some basic phonological concepts, both English and Bai language have some common characteristics: have phonemes and syllables; Phonemes can be divided into vowels and consonants; There are also similarities in the formation of phonemic distinguishing features, but in terms of the social properties of phonology, the two languages also have many differences caused by their national characteristics.

### 3.1. Contrast of Vowel Phonemes in English and Bai Language

In terms of phonemic analysis and classification, English divides segmented phonemes into vowels and consonants, Bai language has some similarities with Chinese: Theoretically, both languages can be classified like English, but in traditional Chinese phonology, there are different analysis methods according to Chinese characteristics. The analysis of phonology takes Chinese characters (representing a syllable) as a unit; usually it is divided into two parts: the front is called a consonant, the back is called a vowel, but the consonant is not equal to the consonant, except the zero consonant, such as in “安 an”, the“爱 ai” consonant is added. Only the consonant located at the beginning of the word is called the consonant; the consonant located at the end is not called the consonant. Vowels are not necessarily equal to vowels.

There are similarities and differences between English and Bai vowel phonemes, and there are great differences between English and Bai because of different language families.

- (1) There are 31 vowel phonemes in Bai language, but only 20 in English.

(2) It is difficult for both languages to find perfect phonemic equivalents in each other's phonemic systems. Only similar or similar phonemes, such as [ao] and [au], have great similarities. In English, different variations of the same phoneme are formed because of differences in individual pronunciation. So we can only say that similar phonemes to the Bai language can be found in English, or phonemic variants of some English vowels can be found. For example, [ao] and [au], although we find similar sounds in the second language, according to historical research, the Bai diphthongs [ao] were originally absent and were specifically used to spell modern Chinese loanwords. Therefore, due to the particularity of the Bai language's pronunciation, phonemes in Bai and English have appeared with seemingly similar but very different pronunciations.

Second, nasal vowels in the Bai language are not found in English vowel phonemes. But if we look at it from a higher perspective, by putting these phonemes in English words, we can easily find similarities in the differences between the two languages. So we say that all nasal vowels in the Bai language are simply absent in the English vowel phonemes, not that they are absent in English. This actually illustrates the problem that nasal vowels unique to the Bai language can have an impact on learning English nasalizations for our Bai-speaking English learners.

### **3.2. Contrast of Consonant Phonemes in English and Bai Language**

English phonetician D. Jones believes that English contains 25 phonemes, 28 of which are consonants. Later, the contemporary American phonetician Gimson simplified it to believe that there are only 44 phonemes in English, of which 24 are consonants. The vernacular language has only 21 phonemes, and all of them are single consonants.

(1) From the phonemic system of English, we can clearly observe that English has more voiced sounds than Bai. Moreover, most voiced sounds in English appear in pairs, forming opposing phonemes. The opposition of these phonemes distinguishes the meaning of words, which not only makes it easy to learn sounds discriminately but also plays a role in distinguishing word meanings.

(2) There are 24 consonant phonemes in English, while only 21 in Bai language.

From the perspective of pronunciation, there are five consonants in Bai language, including bilabial, labial-toothed, tip-of-the-tongue, tongue-faced and root tongue; In English, there are bilabial, labial, alveola, posterior alveola, curl, palatal, soft palate, lesser, glottis and so on.

## **Conclusion**

In conclusion, it is a phenomena and an unavoidable reality that while learning a second language, the acquisition of the target speech system is impacted or interfered with by the native language (Han,2013). According to James Allan, the impact of native language structures on a second language's structure is far stronger than the influence of phonetics. As opposed to the cognitive parts of language behavior, the physiological aspects of language behavior are more resistant to change and adaptation, thus acquiring a whole new phonetic system requires learning new patterns of pronouncing and hearing. However, mastering pronunciation is the cornerstone of learning a foreign language, and teaching pronunciation is a crucial component of teaching a foreign language. The transfer of Bai pronunciation to English is evident in a variety of ways, and it has a significant influence on learners' ability to communicate in English, which is unquestionably a difficulty for English education.

Teachers should therefore fully understand the significance of teaching pronunciation, begin by continuously increasing their literacy in phonetic theory, and be familiar with and proficient in the distinctions between English, Chinese, and Bai language in the phonetic system. In order to maintain students' sensitivity to the differences between the two speech systems and prevent the detrimental effects of Bai language on English learning, we should not only place importance on theoretical teaching but also adopt appropriate practical teaching strategies according to the characteristics of the Bai language, create a good language learning environment, and design and carry out scientific and effective pronunciation training links.

## **References**

[1]G. V S, Anna J. 2023. English Pronunciation Teaching:Theory, Practice and Research Findings. *Multilingual Matters* (03):13.



[2]Han Yu. 2013.The Correlation between Uyghur High School Students' English Pronunciation, Learning Attributions and Self-Concept—A Case Study of Xinjiang Experimental High School, Xinjiang Normal University.

[3]Hu Zhuanglin. 2004. Linguistics and Foreign Language Teaching, Peking University Press (30).

[4]Li Juan. 2013. The study of Fengyu Bai Language, Yunnan Normal University.

[5]Sun Ye. 2004. A developmental Study on the English Pronunciation Self-concept among Chinese EFL Adolescents, Guangdong University of Foreign Studies.

### **About the author:**

Qi Chen, Date of Birth : 2001.10.02, Ethnic: Bai, Address: Dali, Yunnan Province, Gender: Female, Education: Undergraduate of Yunnan University, Author Affiliations: Yunnan University.

# A comparison of Frege and Putnam's anti-psychologism

Junyao Ma

School of Marxism, Jiangsu Normal University, Xuzhou 221116, China

---

**Abstract:** Frege and Putnam represent two different approaches to anti-psychologism. Psychologism has often been interpreted as a form of internalism, while anti-psychologism is associated with externalist viewpoints. This paper examines the transformation of the development process from the opposition between psychologism and anti-psychologism to their influence and integration. It specifically focuses on the issue of “anti-psychologism” and takes G.Frege, one of the representatives of anti-psychologism, as the starting point. The paper is based on his anti-psychologism thought, with a critical analysis of his argumentation against psychologism and an examination of H.Putnam's anti-psychologism, which differs from Frege's perspective. By understanding their rational factors, theoretical difficulties, and limitations, we can gain a clearer insight into “psychologism” and recognize the rationality of psychological factors in philosophical research topics and methods

**Keywords:** Psychologism; Anti-psychologism; the Third Realm; Semantic Exterior; Twin Earths

---

While Frege advocated for a logical view of anti-psychologism and introduced the concept of “the third realm”, his framework was marred by ontological and epistemological contradictions. On the other hand, Putnam argued that meaning does not reside solely in the mind, presenting two major criticisms of traditional theories of meaning, although these arguments do not constitute a complete refutation. Upon analysis of both perspectives, it becomes apparent that psychological factors have a reasonable and positive impact on research.

## 1. Frege's anti-psychologism

Frege's criticism of psychologism in philosophy is all-round and mainly focuses on the two fields of logic and philosophy of language. Therefore, the investigation of Frege's anti-psychologism also starts from the two aspects of logic and philosophy of language.

### 1.1. Logical anti-psychologism

Logical psychologism maintains that logic comes from psychology. Logical psychologists have mostly accepted the British empiricist philosophy, which holds that experience is the source and foundation of knowledge, and that logic is part of human knowledge without exception.

Frege's anti-psychologism stems from his study of mathematics. He insisted that the basis of mathematics was logic, and that mathematics was derived from or reduced to logic. To take logic as the basis of mathematics, it is first necessary to oppose psychologism. Frege argued for the relevance of mathematics and logic, arguing that the two were closely related, and that mathematics “must categorically reject any assistance from psychology”<sup>[1]89</sup>, so logic must be, and that “all inquiries into the persuasiveness of reasoning or the soundness of definitions must be logical”<sup>[1]89</sup>, not psychological. A definition based solely on experience, although valuable, does not guarantee rigor, and is not logically sufficiently reliable. Frege pass such analyzed, and reached the conclusion that logic cannot and should not be based on psychology. Frege also criticized J.S.Mill's view of mathematics by pointing out that mathematical propositions are not derived from experience by induction principles, nor are they descriptions of an observed fact; Where a definition of a number comes from and whether a definition of a number can be made before the fact is observed; We can't explain facts about numbers like 0 and 1. Frege draws the conclusion in *The Foundations of Arithmetic*: the laws of arithmetic are analyzed judgment and are a priori, so the laws of logic must also be a priori. Such a conclusion is the opposite of psychologism.

Frege “wanted to make a clear distinction between the psychological and the logical, between the subjective and the objective”<sup>[2]8</sup>. In the course of his critique of psychologism, Frege takes a logical stand and distinguishes logic from psychology. Frege believes that the main differences between the two lie in the following aspects: First, mathematics and logic do not belong to psychology, and their research objects and laws are not defined, explained or proved by psychological observations and laws; Second, mathematics is the most precise of all

the sciences, with a high degree of rigor, while psychology has many inaccuracies; Third, logic deals with the objective “true”, mathematics deals with the objective and idealized, while psychology deals with the subjective and specific. Frege further criticized psychologism (“logical psychologism”) in *Grundgesetze der Arithmetik*. Frege argued that there are two different types of psychophysical logics<sup>[3]</sup> and neither of these understandings is acceptable.

## 1.2. Frege’s Theory of Meaning and anti-psychologism (“The Third Realm Hypothesis”)

Frege’s anti-psychologism in the two fields of philosophy of language and logic is closely related to a large extent.

Frege believed that proper names have both meaning and reference, and his distinction between meaning and reference is an important contribution to contemporary philosophy of language. Before this, Mill believed that proper names only refer to, but have no meaning. Frege explored the meaning of proper names in his classic treatise on *On Sinn and Bedeutung*, but he did not clearly give what the meaning is. He stressed that the meaning of proper names is not mental images or ideas, making a vivid metaphor that the moon is the reference, the meaning is the telescope image, The subjective impression produced by individuals pass telescopes is the mental image. The mental image is changeable, guided by people, is subjective, different individuals can not compare the mental image, but different individuals can understand the same meaning. Later, in *Thought: A Logical Study*, Frege argued that the meaning of a sentence is proposition or thought. In Frege’s opinion, the meaning of sentence is thought, the reference of sentence is truth value, and people’s thinking of language is to grasp the thought of sentence and judge the truth value of sentence. According to Frege, the main problem with psychologism in philosophy is that the mind often misunderstands language, thus destroying the objective commonality of meaning and thought.

Frege believes that the meaning of a proper name is not something subjective or psychological of a certain cognitive subject, but an objective object that can be grasped by any cognizer. He put the meaning of sentence (i.e. thought) into “the third realm” outside the physical world and the psychological world, so as to ensure objectivity. Concerning the “third sphere”, Frege has some statements that the truth value of the thoughts expressed in some statements, with the time stamp, is never changed. Frege argues that the Pythagorean theorem can be recognized by others as well as by me, that the thought I express by this theorem can be recognized by others, and if so, it is not the content of my consciousness; If the content of the Pythagorean theorem is different for me and for others, then “my Pythagorean theorem” “his Pythagorean theorem” and so on are different theorems, then my thought is the content of my consciousness, and his thought the content of his consciousness. If “true” and “false” apply only to what I personally own, they can only apply to the sphere of my consciousness. Since the content of consciousness of different individuals is incomparable, the object to which truth and false-thought, is applicable, must not belong to my consciousness. From this Frege concludes that thought is neither a thing of the exterior world nor an idea. This necessitates the recognition of the existence of a “the third realm”...For example, if the idea expressed by the Pythagorean theorem is true, then it is a timeless truth, independent of whether anyone thinks it to be true, and true whether anyone admits it or not. According to Frege, sentences express thoughts, which are always true or never false. The meaning of a sentence is the function of its constituent words, the meaning of a sentence is the thought, and the meaning of a word is the concept. Every word, therefore, corresponds to a concept in the third realm.

Frege believes that the relationship between people’s mental activity and language and the meaning of proper names or sentences is accidental. To illustrate this accidental relationship, Frege first argues that “ $a=b$ ” expresses the same relation between  $a$  and  $b$ , but that such identical statements are not necessarily empirical. In Frege’s opinion, to truly understand the meaning of a word is to grasp its connotation, especially some words have no reference in the real world, but it has meaning, people can still understand the meaning they want to express. On the issue of the connotation of linguistic expressions, Frege emphasizes that we should avoid understanding the meaning of words or sentences from the perspective of psychologism. If the connection between meaning and words is psychological, even if the connotation of expressions is objective, we may fall back to the view of psychologists, to equate the connotation with the mental object. Frege believes that people need to use linguistic expressions to grasp the connotation, but there is no internal connection between the two, that is to say, different expressions may have the same connotation. Secondly, in general, for complex sentences, the reference of words placed in the context of belief is called “indirect reference”. In the context of multilayered beliefs, word meaning cannot avoid being associated with the mental states of one or more cognizers. According to Frege, if substituting an expression in a sentence results in a change in the truth value of the sentence,

it means that the reasoning forms of the two expressions are different. The functional relationship between meaning and reference enables people to grasp the logical law of thought, and thus grasp the truth value of the corresponding sentence.

### 1.3. The problem

From Frege's argument, the theory of the third realm is ontologically dubious. According to Frege, the meaning of a sentence is thought, the objective content of thought, which is common to many people, is not unique to any one person, and always appears in the same way as the same thought in all people's understanding. If a thought is true, it is true independently of man's acknowledgment, or even whether he thinks about it. The third realm contains not only thought, but also the mind. Frege did not elaborate on mind, but this mind is not thought, so is there a fourth realm? In the same way, the meaning of the sentence is thought, the reference is the truth, and the truth is not the idea or the mental image, so which domain does the truth belong to? Second, the third realm theory is also epistemologically dubious. According to Frege, the third realm has no properties of time and space. How do we know it exists, how do we know about it, how do we know about it? In this regard, Frege proposed "the power of thought". Thus there is a contradiction. Frege's position is to reject the mental at all, but in explaining the problem of understanding the third realm, he sets up the mental capacity of understanding and reintroduces the mental element. In this way, the knowledge of the third realm requires a psychological study, which Frege rejected, so that his doctrine still appears mysterious. In addition, the presupposition of the third realm creates a inside dissonance in Frege's semantics. Since meaning determines reference, if meaning belongs to the third realm, how does one decide to refer to something in the exterior world?

## 2. Putnam's anti-psychologism

Putnam, like Frege, rejects psychological things, but they represent anti-psychologism in both philosophies of language. Frege is a supernatural anti-psychologist who establishes a third realm beyond nature and psychology as the source of meaning, while Putnam is a naturalistic anti-psychologist with a strong naturalistic tendency. He attributes all previous theories of meaning to "meaning is in the mind" or "meaning is in the heart" and maintains that "meaning is not in the mind".<sup>[4]</sup>

### 2.1. A critique of traditional semantics

Putnam argues that traditional semantics (meaning theory), as represented by Frege and R.Carnap, rests on two false assumptions:"(1) To know or understand the meaning of a word is to be in a (narrow) psychological state. (2) The meaning (connotation) of a word item determines its extension."<sup>[5]</sup>219

The first hypothesis treats meaning as a mental entity, that is, the meaning of a word is equivalent to the concept or idea in one's mind when one hears, sees, or thinks about the word. According to Putnam, "psychological states" are broadly defined in a narrow sense. "Broad psychological states" promise the existence of objects, and this psychological state is also the object of psychological study. And the traditional philosophers are talking about "narrow psychological state", so Putnam re-elaborated two big assumptions:"Let A and B are any two words with different extensions, according to assumption(2), their meaning (connotation) must be different, according to assumption(1), knowing the meaning of A and knowing the meaning of B are in the narrow psychological state, but, Just as the meaning (connotation) of these two words determines the extension, so these psychological states determine the extension of A and B." Thus, traditional semantics holds that the (narrow) psychological states determine the meaning of words, and thus their extension.

The second hypothesis holds that two words with the same extension can have different connotations, for example, "animals with hearts" and "animals with kidneys" have the same extension, but different connotations. However, two words with the same connotation cannot have different extensions.

### 2.2. Externalist Theory of Meaning (Two Major arguments)

Putnam holds that the confluence of these two false assumptions leads to the erroneous conclusion that the psychological state determines the extension of words, which, in sum, is what Putnam called "the meaning is in the mind". Putnam proposed two thought experiment arguments to refute the traditional erroneous view that the same psychological states can determine different extensions.

Putnam's first argument uses the examples of "elm" and "beech". Suppose that we do not know what an elm and a beech look like, that we cannot identify an elm and a beech, but when we say "elm", we have a common extension with what others say about "elm", that is, we can know that the elm and the beech are two different referents, and that they do have different extensions. What is the reason? Putnam argues that it can't be due to our psychological state about the two, which may be exactly the same when we say "elm" as when we say "beech". This argument involves the division of language and shows that individual psychological states do not determine the extension of words.

The second argument is the famous "twin-earth argument", in which Putnam attempts to show that collective, whole psychological states do not determine extension either. Suppose there was another earth, exactly like ours, with one difference: the molecular structures of water on the twin earth is XYZ. When Earth and the people on the twin earth say "water", would their psychological states be different? The psychological states are the same, but the extensions of water are different: the Earthman refers to H<sub>2</sub>O, while the twin earth refers to XYZ. Similarly, Putnam's "brain-in-a-vat" and other myths.

### 2.3. The problem

Putnam does not succeed in arguing that meaning is not in the mind, and that his argument does not constitute a complete rebuttal of "psychological state determines extension".

First, criticize the goal shift. Putnam wants to criticize Frege and other traditional semantics that "to know the meaning of a word is to be in a certain psychological state", but what he actually criticizes is "the meaning of a word is to be in a certain psychological state".

Second, the argument for the twin earth hypothesis is entirely based on the argument of fiction. Under the premise of pure fiction, almost any proposition can be proved, and the argument is not strong enough. Such an argument is similar to the "possible worlds", we can assume that there are an infinite number of possible worlds, one of which all the physical laws of the earth are wrong, such as the three-body world with three suns, constant planets and random epochs... Taking a step back, if a twin earth is possible and the water molecule is XYZ, then it is different from the chemical reactivity etc. produced by substances, then how can the people on the twin earth have the same psychological state about water as the people on the Earth?

Third, ignore the fact that human language communicates.

Moreover, R.Searle, in his writings, also refuted the arguments given by Putnam.<sup>[6]</sup>

## 3. Analysis

The basic points of anti-psychologism (represented by Frege and Husserl) are: From the perspective of the characteristics of the discipline, logic is a normative science, while psychology is an empirical science, and logic is completely different from psychology. The views of logic based on psychology are contradictory and absurd. Logic has necessity, objectivity, accuracy and rigor, and cannot be built on the basis of probabilistic, subjective, fuzzy and inaccurate psychology; Psychologism confuses the normative laws of thinking with the laws of nature (descriptive laws), confuses "true" and "take it as true", confuses some logical concepts (such as reasoning, proof, truth, etc.) with psychological concepts and their characteristics, logic is a normative law about how humans think correctly, rather than a description of how people actually think; Psychologism is bound to lead to relativism.

Although the idea of anti-psychologism has become a highly respected mainstream view in the study of the relationship between logic and psychology, their criticism of psychologism has some shortcomings. In his criticism of psychologism, Frege set up the abstract entity "thought" in order to separate the logical thing from the psychological thing, and then set up "the third realm". The abstract entity "thought" belongs to this field, but the setting about it is not perfect. On the question of how to grasp thought, Frege does not provide a feasible understanding theory. When he constructed the logic view of anti-psychism, he pointed out that the premise of grasping thought is that there is an abstract thinker who grasps thought with the help of his thinking ability. However, he only mentioned that the thinker grasps thought, but he did not explain how the thinker understands and grasps thought, nor could he explain how the grasped thought is transmitted to others, so that he fell into the vortex of mysticism. In fact, we tend to take empirical facts as the basis for judging the truth and falsity of thoughts, and the knowledge we have about experience helps us determine the truth value of thoughts. Frege's vagueness, or avoidance, of these issues prevented him from completely separating logic from mind, leading to the dilemma of his anti-psychologism.

What Frege and Putnam's anti-psychologism deserves to be affirmed is that meaning is indeed not something private or subjective, meaning is public, but the common meaning is something shared by the individual mind, rather than the external world or the third realm. If we understand anti-psychologism as anti-psychologism, that is, against the reduction of logic and semantics to psychology, against the subordination of logic, mathematics, etc., to psychology, this is a correct position; It is wrong if we understand it as the total exclusion of psychological factors and the erasure of all that is psychological in the study of logic and mathematics. How is it possible, then, for the study of the psychological element in philosophy, etc.? C.S. Peirce regards the interpretation of meaning as a psycho-action process, and his behaviorist semantics contains the psychological facts about the interpretation and understanding of (meaning), and ensures the clarity of meaning through action. Taking Peirce's philosophy of language as an example, the analysis of psychological factors may illustrate the feasibility of meaning based on psychology and the influence of psychological factors on philosophical research. So how can we incorporate the study of psychological elements into philosophy? Peirce views the interpretation of meaning as a psycho-action process, and his behaviorist semantics includes psychological facts about interpreting and understanding meaning while ensuring clarity through action. <sup>[4]</sup>By examining Peirce's philosophy of language as an example, analyzing psychological factors may demonstrate the feasibility of basing meaning on psychology and illustrate how psychological factors influence philosophical research.

## References

- [1] Frege G. The Frege Reader. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing; 1997.
- [2] Frege G. The Foundations of Arithmetic. Beijing: The Commercial Press; 2005.
- [3] Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy. Available from: <http://plato.stanford.edu/entries/psychologism/> [Accessed 27th June 2024].
- [4] Zhu Zhifang. No Heart, No Meaning-What is wrong with anti-psychologism. Academic Exchange. 2020; (07):23-29+191.
- [5] Putnam H. Mind, Language and Reality. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press; 1975.
- [6] Searle JR. Intentionality: An Essay in the Philosophy of Mind. Shanghai: Shanghai People's Publishing House; 2005.

## About the author:

Junyao Ma (November 1999-), The Han nationality, Chongqing, Postgraduate student, School of Marxism, Jiangsu Normal University, Her research direction is philosophy.

# An Analysis of Chinese Traditional Culture in the Video of “Li Ziqi” under the the Perspective of Cross-cultural Communication

Linghe Huang

Xi’an Polytechnic University, Xi’an710600, China

---

**Abstract:** The proliferation of short video platforms in recent times has ushered in a proliferation of self-media accounts, with Li Ziqi’s channel standing out prominently. Her series depicting idyllic rural life in China swiftly garnered international acclaim on global video platforms, earning high accolades from esteemed institutions such as CCTV for the superior quality of her content. By harnessing the immediacy of video, Li Ziqi pioneers a novel avenue for audiences worldwide to immerse themselves in Chinese traditional culture. This paper delves into three salient facets of this cultural heritage as embodied in her productions: traditional attire, craftsmanship, and culinary arts. Subsequently, the paper combs out insights and lessons her approach offers for practitioners and scholars in the realm of cross-cultural communication, underscoring the potential of visual storytelling in transcending cultural boundaries.

**Keywords:** Cross-cultural Communication; Traditional Chinese Culture; Social Media; Li Ziqi

---

## Introduction

In today’s accelerated globalized era, where short videos pervade and social media deeply integrates across borders, international communication dynamics evolve. Platforms like YouTube serve as new conduits for understanding diverse cultures, particularly through content creators who share Chinese traditional culture with global audiences. Notably, Li Ziqi, since her 2017 debut, swiftly garnered YouTube’s Silver and Gold Creator Awards and, by February 2, 2021, set a Guinness World Record with 14.1 million subscribers for the “Most Subscribed Chinese Channel.” Her enchanting rural-themed videos innovatively depict Chinese traditions, sparking international curiosity and motivating viewers to explore Chinese culture further.

Known as the lifestyle guru of oriental cuisine by overseas netizens, Li Ziqi’s videos have captured the hearts of audiences worldwide. In China, the official media outlet Guangming Daily has praised her for her ability to showcase the humanistic spirit embedded in Chinese traditional culture through her works, which document the daily life of an ordinary Chinese<sup>[1]</sup>. This paper aims to delve deeper into the vivid portrayal of Chinese traditional culture in Li Ziqi’s videos and explore strategies for effectively engaging in cross-cultural communication of Chinese culture, enabling audiences to perceive its essence more directly and drawing valuable insights from her remarkable success.

## 1. Overview of Cross-cultural Communication

### 1.1 Definition of Cross-cultural Communication

The groundbreaking studies on cross-cultural communication trace their origins to Edward T. Hall’s work, *The Silent Language*. The ability to engage in cross-cultural communication does not arise spontaneously but is cultivated through deliberate efforts, encompassing cognitive, emotional, behavioral, and linguistic facets. In essence, cross-cultural communication refers to the process of cultural exchange among individuals, groups, and nations hailing from diverse cultural backgrounds.

Guo Qingguang (2011) further elaborates that cross-cultural communication involves the mutual exchange between people who possess distinct cultural values and representational systems. This phenomenon is not only an ancient aspect of human history and culture but also a modern lifestyle and a crucial skill. It serves as one of the primary driving forces behind the flourishing of national and global cultures. Unlike conventional communication, cross-cultural communication transcends mere information transmission and exchange; it is a process wherein specific cultures encode and decode information<sup>[2]</sup>. Indeed, the extent of a nation’s cross-cultural communication outreach has become a yardstick for assessing its cultural soft power. cross-cultural communication has emerged as a vital conduit for people worldwide to



interact and comprehend the diverse cultural landscapes of the globe.

## 1.2 The Current State of Cross-Cultural Communication in China

As China's international stature rises, bolstered by rapid advancements in science and technology and expanding influence in political and economic domains, the nation plays an increasingly pivotal role on the global stage, actively fostering friendly diplomatic relations with countries worldwide. In terms of cultural dissemination, the proliferation of Confucius Institutes across the globe serves as a vital window for cross-cultural communication. Furthermore, a myriad of outstanding films and television programs, such as *Empresses in the Palace*, and *A Bite of China*, have reached overseas audiences.

While globalization has narrowed the distance between peoples, media remains the primary conduit through which individuals comprehend the world. Despite some achievements in cross-cultural communication, China still grapples with a deficit in international communicative agency. Given the stark contextual differences between Eastern and Western cultures—manifested in divergent values, thought patterns, and historical backgrounds—the high-context nature of Chinese culture encounters issues of cultural discount and misinterpretation in cross-cultural transmission, potentially creating cultural barriers. Consequently, the promotion of Chinese culture abroad struggles to achieve broad cross-cultural reach, with foreign publics often lacking comprehension with it. This context underscores the complexity and urgency of enhancing cross-cultural communication strategies that bridge these gaps, fostering deeper mutual understanding.

In conclusion, China necessitates a more amiable and emotionally resonant platform for communication, one typified by figures like Li Ziqi who effectively transmit Chinese traditional culture on social media. Her content, characterized by low accessibility thresholds, brevity, and swift audience engagement, coupled with its multidimensional portrayal of China's heritage, exemplifies a successful model for cross-cultural communication. This paper, through examining the depictions of traditional Chinese culture in her videos, aims to distill the key elements behind the success of Li Ziqi's antique Chinese-style videos in transcultural dissemination. It explores how short video enhances global understanding and appreciation of Chinese culture in cross-cultural communication, offering insights and inspirations.

## 2. Presentation of Traditional Chinese Culture in Li Ziqi's Videos

### 2.1 Traditional Chinese attire

Traditional Chinese attire stands as a significant conveyor of the nation's rich cultural heritage, imbued with profound folk traditions and spiritual essence. Li Ziqi's videos, centered on promoting Chinese cultural legacy, notably feature the protagonist donning traditional Chinese attire inspired by Han elements. Rooted in an extensive historical lineage, these costumes embody the unbroken transmission of the Chinese spirit across millennia, serving as a distinctive marker setting the Chinese ethnicity apart from others.

In Li Ziqi's videos, she dons a variety of attire, including crossed-collar short jackets, cheongsams, hooded capes, and modern Han-inspired garments—innovative adaptations of traditional Hanfu, designed for modern wear while incorporating traditional elements such as traditional knotted buttons (*pan kou*), blue calico (*lan ran*), front-opening designs, embroidery, and primarily crafted from natural materials like cotton, linen, and silk, underlining the perfect blend of aesthetics and functionality in Chinese attire. From short jackets and black cotton pants for farm work, to coarse cloth jackets with knotted buttons for cooking at home, to elegant, adapted cheongsams for tea ceremonies and meals, Li Ziqi adorns herself in attire befitting each activity<sup>[3]</sup>.

Despite the subtle distinctions in Asian physical appearances, Li's choice of traditional garb visibly sets her apart from others in video, instantly signaling Chinese cultural symbolism to viewers. The universality of aesthetic appreciation is evident as numerous viewers marvel at the beauty of the Hanfu she wears, facilitating the cross-cultural dissemination of Chinese traditional costume culture.

### 2.2 Traditional Chinese Crafts

Li Ziqi's YouTube channel is replete with vivid demonstrations of traditional Chinese craftsmanship, displaying the series of intangible cultural heritage crafts, offering global audiences a glimpse into the millennia-old wisdom of China. In the video titled *Scholars four treasures*, she illustrates the intricate processes of creating brushes, ink, paper, and inkstone, culminating in a painting of bamboo using her

own handcrafted stationery set. Another video, Woodblock printing, delves into the technique of wood type printing, demonstrating its creation and usage, revealing to overseas viewers how Chinese ancients used these small blocks to produce books that would be passed down through generations, enabling scholars of the past to acquire knowledge. This channel further exhibits the diversity of traditional Chinese clothing-making skills, including silk flowers, Sichuan embroidery, and blue calico, showcasing the variety of Chinese traditional attire to the world. In the video Silk Flowers, she creates garments and hair accessories using the silk flower techniques from the Tang Dynasty. In 2008, silk flower making was included in the second batch of national intangible cultural heritage list.

It becomes evident from these videos that some traditional crafts utilize easily accessible materials, inspiring viewers to attempt their own creations at home. This not only effectively disseminates China's intangible cultural heritage but also portrays China as a major nation with a long-standing tradition of cultural heritage.

### **2.3 Traditional Chinese Cuisine**

China has a clear distinction between the four seasons, a concept that is vividly portrayed in Li Ziqi's videos. Through her lens, viewers witness the traditional Chinese countryside cycle through the phases of spring growth, summer flourishing, autumn harvest, and winter storage. Each seasonal change brings forth its own culinary delights: tender and sweet bamboo shoots emerge in spring; during the scorching summer, a refreshing bowl of mung bean jelly offers relief; summer also yields an abundance of fruits, perfect for crafting homemade jams; as autumn arrives, the yellowing pears inspire the brewing of pear syrup, while plump crabs are transformed into succulent dishes; and as winter takes hold, it's the ideal time for communal hotpot gatherings amidst the snow.

Each video featuring traditional Chinese cuisine meticulously details recipes and cooking methods, allowing viewers to discover the diverse culinary applications of common ingredients across cultures. Li Ziqi's videos excel in tapping into local culture, sourcing ingredients directly from nature, focusing on traditional dishes that chronicle the simple pleasures of rural life. These are the universal exchanges of ordinary people, enabling international audiences to embrace and comprehend Chinese culinary culture in a relaxed setting<sup>[4]</sup>. Her joyful, succinct cooking videos evoke nostalgia, showcase China's culinary richness, spreading Chinese gastronomy worldwide.

## **3. Inspiration**

### **3.1 Redefining China's Image**

Li Ziqi's videos predominantly feature the daily lives of ordinary people, detached from political contexts, focusing on the core content of Chinese culture without ideological or political undertones, thus reducing viewer resistance. Moreover, these videos are rich in the essence and depth of Chinese traditional culture, showcasing the vastness and sophistication of Chinese heritage. She has successfully portrayed China as a broad-minded nation.

Despite the persistent lack of positive, multifaceted, and objective evaluations of Chinese women in the global public consciousness, which often depicts them as weak and inferior<sup>[5]</sup>, Li Ziqi presents herself as an independent, hardworking, courageous, and benevolent individual. She bridges the emotional gap between Chinese and foreign audiences.

Therefore, in cross-cultural communication, presenting a more relatable national and personal image facilitates acceptance among audiences from diverse cultures. According to research conducted by the Academy for Contemporary China and World Studies, an ancient and charming oriental country remains the most prominent impression of China among overseas respondents<sup>[6]</sup>. Therefore, it is even more important to target segmented cultural communities and create content with distinct characteristics of Chinese civilization in cross-cultural communication.

### **3.2 Overcoming Linguistic Barriers**

Different civilizations possess distinct languages and scripts, and the greatest obstacle to cross-cultural communication is often the linguistic barrier. China, being a high-context culture, faces even greater challenges in preserving the original cultural nuances during translation in cross-cultural exchanges.

Surface-level cultural elements like clothing, food, shelter, and transportation are more culturally accessible in cross-cultural communication<sup>[7]</sup>. In her videos, intangible cultural heritage skills closely tied to everyday life, such as food and clothing, garner heightened interest and discussion from foreign audiences. Li Ziqi's videos predominantly feature visuals of the preparation processes for traditional Chinese cuisines and crafts, interspersed with ample scenic shots and minimal spoken dialogue, with textual descriptions taking up a negligible portion. This approach significantly lowers the language barrier, enabling viewers from diverse cultural backgrounds to intuitively appreciate the allure of Chinese traditional culture.

#### 4. Conclusion

Amidst the incessant transformation of the international communication landscape and the ascendance of digital media, cross-cultural communication is witnessing novel trends and characteristics marked by multipolarity. The challenge lies in how to uphold cultural confidence while breaking through cultural barriers, ensuring the accurate and effective dissemination of Chinese culture onto foreign soil. Li Ziqi has provided a commendable response to this challenge. Capitalizing on the technological prowess of new media, she narrates compelling stories about China, unveiling to the world an authentic and comprehensive image of the country.

#### References

- [1] Zhong Chao. (2019, December 9). Why Li Ziqi Became Famous Overseas. *Guangming Daily*, (002).
- [2] Nie Yanwen. (2020). A Study on the Phenomenon of Cross-cultural Communication of Li Ziqi Video. Lanzhou University.
- [3] Wang, Xinzhi. (2022). A Semiotic Analysis of Chinese Rural Life Videos in the Context of Cross-Cultural Communication: A Case Study of Li Ziqi's YouTube Videos. *Audio-Visual*, (11), 20-22.
- [4] Bai Yi. (2022). Research on the Cross-cultural Communication of Ancient-style Food Short Videos: A Case Study of Li Ziqi and Shi Daxia Videos. *West Broadcasting & TV*. 43(13), 19-21.
- [5] Ma Yamin & Gao Yumin. (2022) Research on the "Going Out" Model of Chinese Culture under the Perspective of Cross-cultural Communication: A Case Study Based on the Overseas Dissemination of Li Ziqi's Short Videos. *Governance Modernization Studies*. 38(01), 63-72.
- [6] Research Team, Academy for Contemporary China and World Studies. (2020). The 2019 Report of Global Survey and Analysis of China's National Image. *People's Forum Academic Frontier*. (20), 90-95.
- [7] Yu Qi. (2022). Analysis of the Overseas Dissemination Effect of Chinese Intangible Cultural Heritage - A Case Study of Li Ziqi's Intangible Cultural Heritage Video Column on YouTube. *Audio & Video*. (02), 24-27.
- [8] Guo Qingguang & Teng Yue. (2011). Rethinking Diversities in Cross-cultural Communication: A Cultural Psychological Perspective to Achieve Mutual Understanding between China and the West. *Chinese Journal of Journalism & Communication*. 33(04), 30-36.

#### Author Introduction:

Linghe Huang (1998-), female, Han ethnicity, Xi'an Polytechnic University, master's student, research direction in English translation

# A study on the significance of the human senses (five senses) in fashion design

Jiaqi Huo, Yifei Cai, Hongjie Zhang\*

Quanzhou Normal University, Quanzhou 362000, China

---

**Abstract:** As a bridge for human interaction with the outside world, clothing design must not only meet the basic functional needs but also be able to trigger and satisfy people's emotional needs. From the perspective of emotional expression, the emotional experience in clothing design can enhance consumers' emotional value, thereby increasing the added value of clothing. This illustrates the importance of considering the five senses in fashion design. The objective of this paper is to analyze the significance of the five senses to fashion designers and to investigate the influence of the five senses on cutting-edge fashion design.

**Keywords:** Five Senses; Multi-sensory Concept Design; Smart Textiles

---

## Introduction

The proposal and application of the five senses design concept reflect the design field's emphasis on human subjectivity and the combination of aesthetics and needs<sup>[1]</sup>. This design concept is not only limited to the visual arts but extends to tactile, auditory, olfactory, and other sensory areas. Consequently, enabling fashion design can provide a richer and deeper user experience. For example, by studying the symbolic, visual, and functional elements of the five senses in clothing, the application practice of multi-sensory design can be demonstrated, thereby expanding the conceptual framework of fashion design<sup>[2]</sup>.

## 1. Definition and Importance of the Five Senses

### 1.1 The Definition of the Five Senses

The application of the five senses in fashion design is primarily reflected in enhancing the consumers' emotional communication and interaction through visual, auditory, olfactory, gustatory, and tactile sensory experiences, thereby improving the overall clothing experience.

**Visual Experience:** In fashion design, the use of color is one of the most direct visual experiences. For example, the "Five-Color View" research and its application in modern skirt design integrate the traditional five colors (yellow, red, blue, black, white) into modern skirt design, retaining the traditional connotation of colors while also meeting contemporary design needs, making the clothing both culturally profound and in line with modern aesthetics<sup>[3]</sup>.

**Auditory Experience:** In fashion design, the auditory experiences can be enhanced by adding sound elements. For instance, some high-end brands may play soft music in stores to create a comfortable and relaxing shopping environment<sup>[4]</sup>.

**Gustatory Experience:** Similarly, clothing itself does not have gustatory properties, but in some innovative designs, designers may consider colors or patterns associated with food to stimulate consumers' gustatory associations. Designers can use bright colors and patterns associated with food to evoke consumers' taste associations, using warm colors such as red and orange to remind people of sweet or spicy food. Or collaborate with food brands or restaurants to launch co-branded series that combine food elements with fashion design, providing a unique consumer experience; at fashion shows or brand activities, provide food that matches the clothing series, such as desserts or cocktails, allowing customers to experience the clothing while tasting delicious food; design accessories inspired by food, such as chocolate-shaped necklaces, candy-colored bracelets, etc., to evoke taste memories through tactile and visual elements. Although clothing materials themselves do not have taste properties, designers can try to use fabrics with specific scents, such as vanilla, lemon, etc., to indirectly stimulate taste associations through the olfactory experience.

**Tactile Experience:** In material selection, designers will choose appropriate fabrics according to different functional needs, such as soft silk for making underwear or rough linen for making outdoor clothing, to provide different tactile experiences. In addition, some designs will

also add special buttons or other tactile elements to increase the fun and interactivity when wearing.

Olfactory Experience: Clothing itself has no olfactory properties, but as technology evolves, smart textiles can integrate mechanisms for releasing fragrances, such as activating fragrance release through temperature changes or the wearer’s movements, providing personalized olfactory experiences for wearers. Some brands may develop their own unique fragrances as part of brand recognition. This fragrance can be used in clothing, accessories, and even branded spaces to reinforce brand memory points. Olfaction is strongly linked to memory and emotion. Specific fragrances can evoke people’s good memories or emotional experiences, thereby increasing emotional dependence on clothing.

## 1.2 The Importance of the Five Senses in Fashion Design

The importance of the five senses in fashion design is reflected in how they collectively influence the perception, experience, and expression of clothing. Fashion design is not merely a visual art; it also encompasses a multidimensional experience that includes touch, hearing, smell, and even taste. By integrating these sensory elements, designers create garments that resonate emotionally with both the wearer and the observer. The use of the five senses can elicit emotional empathy and psychological responses. Colors and patterns can evoke emotions, the texture of fabrics can provide a comfortable tactile sensation, sound can add a sense of dynamism, and even scents can evoke memories. These elements work together to shape the overall feeling of the clothing. The author has summarized the effects of the five senses in fashion design and the considerations for designers, as seen in Table 1.

Table 1 Summary Table of the Impact of the Five Senses in Fashion Design

Sensory Experience	Function	Designer Considerations
Visual	Attracts attention through color, patterns, shapes, and lines to convey style and emotions	Color coordination, pattern design, tailoring structure, visual guidance
Tactile	The texture, thickness, and elasticity of the fabric affect the comfort and durability of the clothing	Fabric selection, skin sensitivity, adaptability to wearing occasions
Auditory	The sound of clothing friction or accessories adds a sense of dynamics, creating an auditory experience	Material selection, decorative element design
Olfactory	Specific fabrics or fragrances add a unique scent, evoking emotional memories	Use of fragrances, fabric treatment, emotional associations
Gustatory	Clothing in contact with food or conveying food imagery, evoking gustatory associations	Cultural considerations, festival-themed design

The five senses in fashion design not only enhance brand image and consumer experience, but also achieve a balance between emotion and function, and drive design innovation, bringing new opportunities for the development of the fashion industry. By considering the five aspects of vision, hearing, touch, smell, and taste comprehensively, a richer and more three-dimensional brand image can be created.

Visual Design: By using specific colors, patterns, and materials, designers can leave a deep impression on consumers visually. For example, Jin Jian Clothing uses Chinese elements as the core visual elements for brand image redesign. Through eye-tracking experiments and affective semantic survey questionnaires, the brand image design most favored by consumers was ultimately selected.

Auditory Design: Fashion brands can provide a unique auditory experience for consumers when they enter the store or come into contact with products through music or sound effects.

Tactile Design: By using different fabric textures and textures, the tactile experience of consumers can be enhanced. For example, high-end fashion brands may use soft silk or rough leather to convey the luxury or uniqueness of their brand.

Olfactory Design: Fragrance is an important means for brands to convey emotions and atmosphere. Some fashion brands may use specific perfumes or scents in the store to enhance the consumer’s shopping experience and leave a lasting memory.

Gustatory Design: The direct application of gustatory design in the fashion industry is relatively rare, but some brands may provide samples in their product packaging or in-store to allow consumers to taste and experience the brand’s unique flavor, especially in fashion brands related to food.

The in-depth exploration and innovative use of the five senses allow designers to create distinctive clothing works, achieve differentiated design, and meet the market and consumer demand for personalization and innovation.

## 2. Multi-sensory Concept Design

The application of the “multisensory” concept of recognizability can enhance the identifiability of clothing. This is achieved by leading with consumer attention and incorporating tactile, auditory, olfactory, and gustatory sensory information expression methods into clothing through new techniques and technologies, thereby satisfying consumers’ curiosity. The recognizability of clothing can be used to enhance the cultural connotation of the brand, making it more personalized. Multisensory clothing better conveys the emotional content of the clothing and transmits the concept of clothing product design through the joint action of vision, touch, hearing, and taste. Interactivity plays a role in the psychological response process when consumers shop, which is generally: attention, interest, desire, memory, and action. The specific process is: to attract attention, inspire desire, enhance memory, and lead to action. Multisensory clothing usually has good interactivity, which can guide consumers from noticing to being interested in clothing products, from interest to wanting to own, and ultimately to take action. Therefore, the multisensory concept can make clothing products more charming in design. The core of multisensory design lies in integrating various sensory experiences such as vision, hearing, and touch to enhance the user experience and market competitiveness of the product. This design concept not only focuses on the functionality and practicality of the product but also emphasizes emotional design and the emotional experience of the user. In terms of technological innovation, the application of intelligent sensing technology and augmented reality technology provides new possibilities for multisensory design. Intelligent sensors can collect and analyze environmental data and human behavior, realizing the call, expansion, and amplification of the user’s perceptual system, bringing new sensations. Augmented reality technology enhances the user’s sense of immersion and interactivity by combining the virtual with the real.

With the development of technology, the multi-sensory concept has gradually been applied in various industries, creating an environment with multiple sensory stimuli to enhance the perceptual ability and cognitive function of the experiencer, thereby increasing the attractiveness of the product. The multi-sensory concept advocates the use of multiple senses such as vision, hearing, smell, touch, proprioception, and vestibular sensation in the learning process or design process, to promote learning efficiency, enhance product experience, and attract consumer attention. According to a study, when consumers purchase a certain type of product, visual senses account for 58% of the influence, smell accounts for 15%, hearing accounts for 11%, and taste and touch account for 3% and 25%, respectively. This shows that multi-sensory design has a significant effect in attracting consumer attention and increasing the desire to purchase. Similarly, in fashion design, designers often need to capture consumers’ attention in the face of a huge clothing market, not only by simple clothing design, but also by using multi-sensory concepts in the selection of clothing materials, clothing colors, clothing crafts, the interaction between clothing and the human body, and the testing of human functions to design products. In 2021, Patricia Cornelio and others published “The Application of Multisensory Fashion Communication Media in Impression Management,” which, from the perspective of multisensory stimulation, mentioned two innovative fashion accessories in the literature - sound perfume and light perfume. Sound perfume combines auditory and olfactory stimulation and focuses on the display function of impression management through eye contact technology. This design not only enhances personal image management when users communicate face-to-face with others but may also affect their perception of themselves and others. Light perfume uses visual and olfactory stimulation and combines mirror interaction technology, targeting the emotional function of impression management. These design cases demonstrate how multisensory stimulation can enhance user experience and self-expression<sup>[5]</sup>. In 2021, Gan Zhinan published “Research on Optimization Method of Outdoor Interactive Advertising Visual Effects Assisted by New Media Technology and Big Data Analysis,” which uses new media technology and big data analysis to optimize the visual effects of outdoor interactive advertising according to consumer behavior and preferences, making it more attractive and improving the memory rate<sup>[6]</sup>. It can adjust the combination of color, text, and graphics by analyzing a large amount of user data to better attract the target audience. With the development of technology, outdoor advertising has changed from the traditional static form of expression to a more dynamic and multi-dimensional display. The application of new media technology has brought new possibilities to outdoor advertising design, allowing advertising to innovate in sound, color, and shape, and even interact with the audience. This transformation requires designers to consider various factors in the design process,

such as the size of the advertisement, the proportion of the pattern, the integration of the background color with the advertising content, and the lighting requirements of the installation location.

In this era of rapidly advancing technology, the transmission of multisensory signals in everyday life has painted a picture of the representative technological advancements for each primary sense, which the author has summarized and analyzed for vision, hearing, touch, smell, and taste (see Table 2). In each section, emerging technologies and their benefits to individual sensory modalities are first introduced, that is, using different technologies as modules for research involving multiple senses.

Table 2 Summary Table of the Benefits of Emerging Technologies for Individual Sensory Modalities

Sensory Modality	Technology	Stimulus	Multisensory Integration Advantages	Reference Studies
Visual	3D volumetric display	Depth	Visual content can be heard and felt, providing 3D cues in the real world	Hirayama et al., 2019
Auditory	Acoustic lens and metamaterials	Directionality	Audio signals can be felt and used to orient and manipulate objects in visual displays, offering free navigation	Norasikin et al., 2018, 2019
Tactile	Focused ultrasound	Non-invasive 3D tactile sensation	The generated sound waves can produce tactile sensations and can also be heard, easily integrated into visual paradigms	Carter et al., 2013; Martinez Plasencia et al., 2020
Olfactory	Wearable olfactory technology	Portability and body responsiveness	Portability makes it easy to integrate with other multisensory technologies, allowing on-demand delivery outside the laboratory environment	Amores et al., 2018; Wang et al., 2020
Gustatory	Levitating food	Sterile, non-invasive	Can be integrated with visual, olfactory, auditory, and tactile stimuli in 3D space, enabling manipulation of food trajectories	Vi et al., 2017b, 2020

The exploration of multi-sensory design in fashion design has not only adopted a new design concept but also developed the multi-aspect and multi-level sensory functions of consumers in fashion design, making the expression of clothing more abundant. The importance of the five senses in clothing design is reflected in many aspects: it can not only enhance the emotional value of consumers and strengthen the interactivity and experience between the design product and the audience, but also open up new design opportunities through the application of technology. Fashion designers should pay more attention to the value and significance of the five senses in design to achieve the combination of art and technology, and meet the modern consumers' pursuit of high-quality life experience.

### 3. Technology and Clothing

Against the backdrop of technological development, the application of digitalization and technology has also opened up new opportunities for the design of the five senses. The innovative integration of the five senses with clothing is an important direction currently explored by both the fashion and technology industries. By using technological devices to transform human senses into design materials, new artistic expressions can be explored, and this method has been applied to fashion design. This indicates that with the continuous growth of technological capabilities, the application of the five senses in design is also a trend in the development of future design. The concept of five-sense design emphasizes the importance of vision, hearing, smell, taste, and touch in product design. This design philosophy is not limited to traditional visual aesthetics but attempts to create a richer and deeper user experience through the integration of multiple senses. In fashion design, this means that designers need to consider how to stimulate and satisfy consumers' five senses through the clothing itself, thereby enhancing the wearing experience and emotional connection.

At present, smart clothing has become an important field of research. These garments not only have the functions of traditional clothing but also integrate sensors, data processing, and communication technology, capable of perceiving environmental changes or human conditions and responding accordingly. For example, smart clothing can monitor physiological parameters such as heart rate and body temperature, providing health information feedback to the wearer. In addition, smart clothing can interact with the outside world through integrated sensors and actuators, such as automatically adjusting temperature and color changes to adapt to different emotional states. Moreover, there are also innovative developments in materials and technology; for example, by using special textile materials and processes, clothing with



specific tactile sensations, odors, or visual effects can be created. Furthermore, interdisciplinary cooperation has also brought new inspiration and possibilities to fashion design, such as combining art, neuroscience, and human-computer interaction technology to develop clothing that can trigger specific perceptual and emotional responses.

In real life, user-designed products are gradually becoming mainstream, gradually replacing mass production. For consumers purchasing clothing, in addition to considering the comfortable and aesthetic wearing experience, they also consider the possibility of “dressing the same”. At this stage, more and more people are no longer pursuing “celebrity style” products, but are more focused on the personalization of clothing and their own feelings about fashion design<sup>[7]</sup>.

In 2021, Van Tienhoven and others published an article titled “The Affect of Fashion: An Exploration of Affective Method”, in which the design method uses 3D body sensing technology to generate 3D human body models, and the component combination technology of fashion design can generate various clothing. Finally, by aligning and 3D registering the 3D model with the clothing, users can view the implementation effect of the designed clothing, which will help improve the efficiency of modern fashion design. Unlike other fashions, users are more willing to change the style details of clothing according to personal preferences. This technology can accurately capture the wearer’s body shape and provide data support for custom-made clothing. Through 3D body scanning, an accurate virtual model can be created, and then fashion design can be carried out on this model to ensure that the clothing fits the wearer’s body perfectly<sup>[8]</sup>.

As early as 2015, Carlo Massaroni et al., published an article entitled “Overview of Medical Smart Textiles Based on Fiber Optic Technology,” in which the use of fiber optic sensors (FOSs) as a replacement for traditional electrical and mechanical sensors in medical applications has been widely accepted. The main advantages of FOSs include good measurement properties, small size and flexibility, and immunity to electromagnetic fields. In addition, they are suitable for textiles used in magnetic resonance imaging environments, which cannot be used by standard electronic sensors<sup>[9]</sup>.

In addition, Yang Kai et al. published an article titled “Development of User-Friendly Wearable Electronic Textiles for Healthcare Applications” in 2018, which investigated a user-friendly wearable electronic sleeve that integrates an electrode array for health monitoring (Fig1). The sleeve integrates an electrode array directly on daily clothing using screen-printing technology to optimize the user experience, including comfort, effectiveness, and ease of use. The e-sleeve will help eight stroke survivors complete functional tasks, such as hand opening and pointing through muscle stimulation<sup>[10]</sup>.

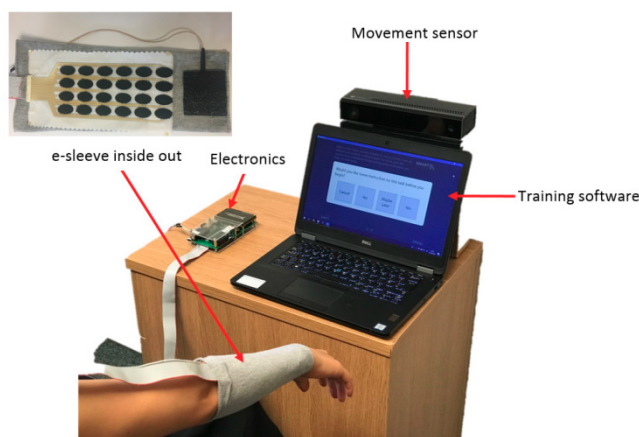


Fig 1: Development of User-Friendly Wearable Electronic Textiles for Healthcare Applications. 2018

In 2020, Tajadura-Jiménez and others published an article titled “Altering One’s Body-Perception Through E-Textiles and Haptic Metaphors,” in which they will use smart textiles to integrate sensors into clothing that can capture the wearer’s body movements and environmental changes, thereby changing the appearance or function of the clothing (Fig 2). For example, fabrics based on 2D vibration tactile arrays can be designed to change human perception, such as simulating the feeling of weight or intensity<sup>[11]</sup>.



Fig 2: Altering One's Body-Perception Through E-Textiles and Haptic Metaphors. 2020

For the five senses, the development of smart textiles has brought new market opportunities for the clothing industry. As consumers' demand for smart and personalized products continues to grow, the market demand for smart textiles is also expanding. This has prompted more companies to invest in the research and development and production of smart textiles, driving innovation and progress throughout the industry.

### Summary:

The importance of the five senses for fashion designers lies in their collective composition of the multi-dimensional experience of fashion design, which is an indispensable factor for designers in the creative process. They are not only important tools for designers to capture inspiration and conceive ideas but also a bond that connects designers with the consumers' deep hearts. Vision endows clothing with unique colors and patterns, touch brings comfortable texture and feel, and smell and hearing can evoke people's deep emotions and memories. Although the direct application of taste in fashion design is relatively limited, the associated experience it represents is equally important. The five senses are interrelated and interact with each other, jointly influencing the innovation, practicality, and comfort of fashion design.

Smart textiles have made the leap from single function to multi-sensory interaction through the application of the five senses, greatly enhancing their utility. From the intuitive display of visual information and design innovation to the automatic adjustment of tactile comfort, smart textiles provide users with personalized experiences to users while also improving their adaptability and convenience. With the continuous development of technology, we have reason to believe that smart textiles will continue to deepen and innovate in the five senses experience in the future, bringing more intelligent and comfortable wearing experiences to users.

### References

- [1] Zhu Lin. "Five Senses" Research in Design [D]. Shanxi Normal University, 2018.
- [2] Li Yile. Research on the Application of Multi-sensory Design Elements in Clothing[D]. Sichuan Fine Arts Institute, 2021.
- [3] Tang Huan. Research on "Five-color View" Based on Kansei Engineering and Its Application in Modern Skirt Design [D]. Jiangnan University, 2020.
- [4] Liu Wenqiao. Application of Sensory Elements in the Image of Clothing Brand Sales Field [J]. Dachangtai, 2013, No. 297 (02): 186-187+215.
- [5] Yongsoon Choi and A. Cheok. "Multisensory fashion communication media towards impression management." *Int. J. Arts Technol.* (2015). 364-381.
- [6] Zhinan Gan and S. Tsai. "Research on the Optimization Method of Visual Effect of Outdoor Interactive Advertising Assisted by New Media Technology and Big Data Analysis." *Mathematical Problems in Engineering* (2021).
- [7] M. V. van Tienhoven and A. Smelik. "The affect of fashion: An exploration of affective method." *Critical Studies in Fashion & Beauty* (2021).
- [8] Zhe Yu Liu and Min Luo. "Modern Clothing Design Based on Human 3D Somatosensory Technology." *J. Sensors* (2022). 1-11.
- [9] C. Massaroni, P. Saccomandi et al. "Medical Smart Textiles Based on Fiber Optic Technology: An Overview." *Journal of Function-*

al Biomaterials (2015). 204 - 221.

[10]Kai Yang, K. Meadmore et al. "Development of User-Friendly Wearable Electronic Textiles for Healthcare Applications." Italian National Conference on Sensors (2018).

[11]A. Tajadura-Jiménez, A. Väljamäe et al. "Altering One's Body-Perception Through E-Textiles and Haptic Metaphors." Frontiers in Robotics and AI (2020).

### **About the author:**

Jiaqi Huo (2001-), female Han ethnicity. Master's student from Kaifeng, Henan Province. Currently studying at Quanzhou Normal University. Research direction: Art and Design.

Yifei Cai (1998-) Han Chinese Master's degree candidate from Laizhou, Shandong Current research direction: Art and Design.

### **Corresponding author:**

Hongjie Zhang (1982-) Han Chinese, Doctoral, lecturer, Current research direction: Native Cellulose Fibre.

# An Analysis of the Visual Characteristics of Vertical Screen Images in the Era of Intelligent Media Audiovisual

Qin Qin

Jingchu University of Technology, Jingmen 448000, China

---

**Abstract:** In the era of intelligent media audiovisual, vertical screen images have gradually become the preferred browsing device playback mode for consumers. Taking clarifying the visual characteristics of vertical screen images as a breakthrough point, promoting visual innovation in vertical screen images can provide consumers with a more comfortable and effective visual experience. In view of this, it is necessary to recognize the differences in narrative space between vertical and horizontal banners, the strengthening effect of narrowing narrative space by vertical banners on gaze, and the normative role of audio-visual language transformation in vertical screen image production. The production and innovation of vertical screen image content should grasp the production characteristics and pay attention to visual direction and spatiotemporal integration.

**Keywords:** Vertical Screen Image; Mathematical Intelligence; Content Production

---

## 1. The creative elements of scene scheduling in vertical screen image space

Essentially, scene scheduling is an appropriate adjustment of the positional relationship between the performer and the camera. When scene scheduling is applied to video shooting, it emphasizes the creator's control ability over complex scenes, including the performer's position, movement path, camera movement trajectory, the relationship between the performer and the frame space, camera angle, and other scheduling abilities, and integrates them into a complete and orderly scene scheduling plan.

### 1.1 The difference in narrative space between vertical and horizontal frames

The display ratio of vertical frames is usually 9:16 or 3:4 in the vertical direction, with the vertical space of the frame extending upwards or downwards, while traditional horizontal frames have a wider display ratio in the horizontal space.

Compared to the scene scheduling of a single shot, the frame space on both sides of a vertical frame is narrower, which has certain limitations in horizontal visual presentation. Based on shooting experience and the characteristics of the vertical frame composition, the design concept of the lens needs to be updated to strengthen the visual sense of space from the shooting angle and camera scheduling. The vertical frame is more suitable for shooting vertical spatial images, with the protagonist as the viewpoint character. Creators use different scene and viewpoint lens switching to display the relationship between characters and space in the vertical space viewpoint direction, which is more suitable for expanding spatial depth and depicting the personality characteristics of a single character.

### 1.2 Narrowing the vertical frame to enhance the narrative space and enhance the gaze effect

Compared to the horizontal spatial visual effect, the horizontal spatial range of the vertical frame shrinks towards the visual center point. The degree of "trade-off" in the internal space of the frame dominates the primary and secondary relationship of audio-visual elements, making it difficult for multiple character roles to coexist with the corresponding background environment in a narrow narrative space. But in a narrower narrative space, the individual characteristics of the main character are more prominent, which can narrow the visual distance with the audience and weaken the horizontal spatial connection between the main character and the background environment. In vertical frames, the focus of composition is on simplifying elements and compressing visual presentation space. At half the size of the frame, the focus of the gaze is selected on 1 to 2 characters, and the lens tracks the close-up image of the subject, emphasizing the facial expressions and emotional communication of the subject.

The narrowed horizontal visual space allows the audience to focus on the central point of the image at the visual level. To ensure that the central content of the picture captures the audience's attention in a very short period of time, it is necessary to require content producers to

design visual elements within the first 1-10 seconds of the work to attract the audience's attention. Therefore, compared to horizontal spatial visual effects, vertical frames are more suitable for depicting the psychological perspective of a single character and the intimate relationships of a small number of characters, presenting a "small" rather than "grand" narrative scene.

### **1.3 Audio Visual Language Reform Standardizes Vertical Screen Image Production**

The interactivity and sociality of vertical screens are important characteristics of vertical audio-visual language. Deep space emphasizes the integration of photography machines and photographers, making machines an extension of human orientation. Immersive subjective perspectives are gradually replacing traditional objective perspectives, achieving the integration of lens and human eye perspectives, and strengthening the extension of subjective visual axis in the visual space. When a vertical screen lens simulates the movement path of a subjective perspective, capturing the moving image using the visual axis of the human eye as the vertical line of the vertical space will become one of the characteristics of the audio-visual language of vertical screen images.

Vertical screen composition breaks the traditional landscape aesthetic paradigm. The changes in visual factors such as composition, scenery, and lens angle of vertical screen images reconstruct the internal spatial framework. The basic composition principles of audio-visual language carry the transmission of information and emotions in the picture. However, based on the perspective of French Impressionist painter Matisse on the composition of images, "composition is aimed at expressing narrative images, so different narrative images will have different compositions.". The most commonly used shooting methods for vertical screen images are frontal close-up and first person subjective perspective shots, where frontal close-up equals listening to "me"; First person perspective=looking with "you". The most distinctive feature of vertical screen image composition is the "Point of View" composition<sup>[1]</sup>.

## **2. Production and Innovation of Vertical Screen Image Content**

### **2.1 Vertical screen image production features**

Compared to the grand narrative features presented by landscape images, vertical short videos tend to be more lightweight and entertaining in content creation, forming a two-way communication mode between media and audiences. The functional design of the APP strengthens the linkage between content production and audience users, while cultivating users' content preference attributes and interactive forms in a "cultivation system" style.

Integrating the vertical frame and editing features of short and micro videos, while subversively utilizing the audio-visual language characteristics of traditional film and television dramas. The content shooting and presentation form are both vertical screens, and content producers design "explosive points" based on user viewing habits and user psychology to attract users to stay on the playback interface and enable real-time likes, comments, and favorites of the watched content. Each video takes approximately 5 minutes and can be produced as a single episode of independent content or as a collection of content with plot connections. How to efficiently highlight the clear directionality of vertical screen audio-visual language and its role in vertical screen short videos, content producers need to continuously cultivate and innovate the artistic expression of vertical screen images in terms of lens language, content mode, and other aspects.

### **2.2 The visual turn and spatiotemporal fusion of vertical screen images**

Henri Lefebvre, a renowned French philosopher and aesthetician, elaborated on the complex relationship between works and products in his book "The Production of Space", much like the "things" in time and space. The immersive dissemination of "things" is the opening of a spatial form centered on human communication to the boundaries of life, strengthening the interaction between humans and space.

In the vertical screen mode of dissemination, "objects" are equivalent to vertical short video works, and the content and interaction forms presented by vertical screen images are centered around human communication points, strengthening the audience's immersive communication form when appreciating "objects". The audience can enter the media screen for internal and external interaction without additional operations, and the automatically played short videos extend the audience's immersion time.

Famous scholar Zhang Ali mentioned in his article "New Quality Productivity is a New Opportunity for the High Quality Development

of Chinese Film and Television” that “New quality productivity has opened up a new track of film and television technology and content innovation. The core essence of developing new quality productivity in film and television is film and television technology innovation, and using technological innovation to drive innovation in film and television content production is a new driving force and trend for the high-quality development of Chinese film and television.”<sup>[2]</sup>

The new business model represented by AIGC (Artificial Intelligence Generated Content) poses a huge challenge to the traditional film and television industry and audio-visual language, even directly subverting the redefined concept, function, and visual editing thinking of video creation. Video creators simulate the perspective of intelligent handheld cameras to create a sense of participation and immersion. Vertical images are widely spread through the vertical screens of smartphones, and “instant messaging” is presented in various ways both inside and outside the screen.

### 3. Conclusion

The aesthetic paradigm of vertical screen images in the era of intelligent media audiovisual meets the needs of mobile media for scenes, and the development of content updates and cross screen innovation must adhere to the improvement of content quality. On the basis of the traditional film and television industry, we will deeply explore the technical level, develop high-quality creative vertical screen works, and focus on exploring innovative ways of vertical screen imaging in audiovisual aspects and vertical screen creative narrative thinking. Vertical motion images represent a new aesthetic that fits the aesthetics of the times. Regardless of the visual shift and media technology iteration and upgrading of vertical motion images, the content creativity of vertical motion images is the core development point of the era of intelligent media audiovisual.

In the new media industry, video content producers should focus on the current spiritual and cultural needs of the people in order to seize the latest traffic in the transformation of traditional and new media communication methods. They should systematically reconstruct the value framework of vertical screen images, deeply explore efficient expression methods that closely align the content and form of vertical screen images with the spiritual and cultural needs of the people, thereby enhancing the commercial value of vertical screen images and achieving the transformation and upgrading of media technology.

### References

[1] Dong Yuexin Exploration and Application of Picture Composition in Vertical Short Video [D]. Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications, 2022.

[2] Zhang Ali New quality productivity is a new opportunity for the high-quality development of Chinese film and television China Film Daily, May 1, 2024 (010).

基金资助:

- 1、荆楚理工学院科研项目“竖屏影像视听发展创新路径探究——以短片创作课程为例”（项目编号：QN202418）
- 2、荆门市 2024 科技思想库课题“抢占新端口流量：市场驱动下竖屏影像领域的革新与挑战”（项目编号：202405）

# A Brief Overview of the Development of Generative AI

Weijia Liu, Miaomiao Li

Qufu Normal University, Qufu 276800, China

---

**Abstract:** Since the 1950s, with the development of computers and information technology, especially the breakthroughs in deep learning technology, Generative AI has gradually evolved from a single language generation to a multimodal and embodied direction. And has shown a strong vitality through pretrain and prompt, with data-driven and powerful generative capability, deep learning and highly customised, intelligent simulation and real-time efficiency. It has the characteristics of data-driven and powerful generative ability, deep learning and highly customisable, intelligent simulation and real-time efficiency. A clear overview of the development of Generative AI will help promote agile governance and the development of technology for good while empowering various industries.

**Keywords:** Generative AI; Pretraining; Multimodal

---

In recent years, artificial intelligence technology has shown a booming trend, with Generative AI represented by large-scale models such as ChatGPT becoming the focus. These technological breakthroughs have not only surpassed perceptual intelligence, but are also rapidly advancing towards cognitive intelligence and general artificial intelligence, injecting powerful momentum into a new round of technological revolution and industrial transformation. In 2022, ChatGPT became extremely popular, drawing people's attention to the development of generative artificial intelligence. Simply put, generative artificial intelligence is an AI technology that can generate texts, images, and other content. Such AI has existed for a long time, but the emergence of Generative AI represented by ChatGPT is more due to the upgrading of its algorithm technology and data model, which has given Generative AI a brand-new look.

## 1. Connotation and characteristics of Generative AI

### 1.1. Connotations of Generative AI

Generative AI is a new paradigm for generating multimodal content such as text, images, sound and video through algorithmic techniques such as Generative Adversarial Networks, Variable Auto-Encoders and Autoregressive Models based on large scale pre-trained modeling, in particular Transformer modeling architectures. The core of the technology is "autoregressive" and the modalities are "pretrain" and "prompt".

### 1.2. Characteristics of Generative AI

#### 1.2.1. Data-driven with powerful generative capabilities

Generative AI is data-driven, capable of extracting information and knowledge from a database set and generating entirely new and creative content based on input conditions. The GPT-1 language model has 117 million training parameters, the GPT-2 has 1.5 billion, and the GPT-3 has 175 billion, and the growth of training data accompanying the language model iteration has reached nearly 13 times and nearly 117 times, respectively. The technological breakthrough of GPT-4 mainly focuses on the two aspects of multimodal task capability and long content generation, and the number of training parameters reaches the scale of hundreds of billions. From GPT-1 to GPT-4, the volume and quality of training data have been continuously improved, while the data mining capability has been continuously strengthened.

#### 1.2.2. Deep learning and high customisability

Generative AI is based on deep learning models that can progressively extract low-level features from data and combine them into higher-level abstractions to minimise the discrepancy between the predicted output and the actual goal. Generative AI utilises an adaptive learning mechanism that not only performs well on known data, but also demonstrates good generalisation capabilities to generate reasonable and coherent content in unseen contexts. At the same time, it has strong contextual understanding and can adapt, configure, or retrain AI models to generate compliant content based on user-specific needs, preferences, or application scenarios.



### *1.2.3. Intelligent simulation and efficient empowerment power*

Generative AI is “human brain intelligence” + “machine intelligence”, which is able to simulate human thinking and creativity to generate brand new content, especially in the fields of vision and voice recognition. Through this powerful generative capability, Generative AI continues to empower all areas of society. Whether in finance, healthcare, education or entertainment, Generative AI is able to enhance industry efficiency and innovation by providing intelligent solutions. For example, in the financial sector, Generative AI can provide investors with more accurate investment advice by analysing large amounts of financial data.

## **2. The evolution of Generative AI**

Artificial intelligence technology has been developing for more than seventy years, and has roughly experienced four waves, the first two waves were mainly breakthroughs in the neural network and language recognition technology level, and the third wave was supported by deep learning technology, and the node of Alpha Go’s intellectual competition with human beings was the victory. Generative AI is beginning to take on brain-like characteristics, which is a typical representative of the 4th wave of AI.

### **2.1. First generation natural language processing, simple text analysis Generative AI**

The 1950s and 1960s to the beginning of the 21st century were the early nascent stages of AIGC. The use of AI techniques to generate content was explored during this phase, but was limited to small-scale research experiments. With the rise of AI concepts, statistical models such as the N-gram model, which has the ability to be used to generate sequential data based on systematic learning, became an early form of generative modelling. As statistical methods evolved and machine learning became a focus of research, the concept of neural networks was revived. Scientists began to explore the use of neural network models to simulate human cognitive processes. At the same time, methods based on the principles of natural selection and biological evolution, such as genetic algorithms and evolutionary programming, were introduced to generate solutions that satisfy specific constraints or optimisation goals. Due to the limitations of computing power, Generative AI at this time had huge shortcomings and could only generate short sentences and simple sequences.

### **2.2. Deep learning technology breakthroughs, Generative AI for development in various fields**

Deep learning is better able to deal with complex non-linear problems by building deep neural network perceptual models. Especially in areas such as image recognition and speech recognition. In 2007, the novel *The Road*, written by an AI system assembled by New York University AI researcher Ross Goodwin, became the world’s first novel created entirely by AI. At this stage, the application fields of Generative AI continued to expand, and were applied to speech synthesis, video generation, music composition and other fields, which enriched people’s life and entertainment, and also provided new possibilities for art creation and media production and other fields. This is the stage of AIGC precipitation and accumulation, but due to the algorithm, the resulting content has more errors.

### **2.3. Compelling Chat GPT, the Great Explosive Rise Generative AI**

In June 2018, OpenAI launched the GPT-1 model, which has some generalisation capabilities and is capable of natural language reasoning, Q&A and attempted reasoning, etc. GPT-2, GPT-3 and GPT-3.5, and GPT4 followed, with each generation of models achieving significant improvements in scale and performance. The launch of OpenAI’s new GPT-4Turbo in November 2023 OpenAI launched the new GPT-4Turbo, the company’s latest milestone in scaling deep learning, with Generative AI moving gradually from monolingual language generation to multimodal and embodied rapid The company’s new GPT-4Turbo is the latest milestone in expanding deep learning. In the short term, Generative AI technology changes the basic productivity tools, it will change the production relations of society, and in the long term it will lead to a qualitative breakthrough in the productivity of the whole society.

## **Concluding remarks**

The development of Generative AI is in a booming period. In this era of change, we need to meet the challenges and opportunities with an open mind and an innovative spirit, and jointly promote the development of “new quality productivity” and the corresponding production relations, as well as the progress and development of human society. At the same time, in order to cope with the prob-

lems and potential ethical risks at this stage, we need to strengthen the construction of policies and regulations, interdisciplinary cooperation and communication, as well as the enhancement of the public's digital literacy, so as to minimise the ethical risks of Generative AI and better empower the society at the same time.

## References

- [1] Xiaoli Wang,Chi Yan. Risk issues and regulatory progression of Generative AI macromodels: an example of GPT-4[J/OL]. Journal of Beijing University of Aeronautics and Astronautics (Social Science Edition),1-11[2024-06-20].
- [2] Wen Zhao. Research on Generative AI Generated Content Governance - A Perspective on ChatGPT[J]. Communication and Information Technology,2024,(02):95-99.
- [3] RYAN T. Chips and Science Act [R/OL]. (2022-08-09)[2023-04-05].
- [4] David Rozado, "The Political Biases of Chat GPT," Social Sciences, Vol. 12, No. 3, 2023, pp. 1-8.
- [5] HU Bing,JONG Siyue. Implications of the Dutch preemptive techno-ethical thinking for AIGC governance[J]. Young Journalist,2024(02):48-54.
- [6] Zhang Haopeng,Xia Baohua. What makes artificial moral intelligences feasible - based on an examination of value-sensitive design[J]. Natural dialectics research,2021,37(04):37-42.

## About the author:

Weijia Liu (1999.11-), female, Han Nationality, from Yucheng, Shandong Province, postgraduate student, research direction: philosophy of science and technology.

## About the author:

Miaomiao Li (1999.10-), female, Han Nationality, from Xinzhou, Shanxi Province, postgraduate student, research direction: ethics.

# Study on the Path of Ecotourism for Tourism Economic Development in Guizhou Province

Qiling Tan

Guizhou Provincial Institute of Ethnic Studies, Guiyang 550001, China

---

**Abstract:** Relying on the unique local ecological environment and rich tourism resources, Guizhou Province (located in the Southwest of China) adheres to the concept of sustainable development, and the development of the tourism industry has gaining remarkable results, bringing considerable economic benefits. Driven by economic development and environmental protection, ecotourism and tourism development in Guizhou Province are interpenetrated. The purpose of this paper is to discover the problems existing in the development of ecotourism and tourism economy in Guizhou Province, to find a long-term path to further integration of the two, to comprehensively enhance the competitive strength of ecotourism, and to achieve the coordinated development of economy, society and environment.

**Keywords:** Guizhou Province; Ecotourism; Tourism Economy

---

## 1. Current situation of ecotourism in Guizhou Province

Known for its unique geographical location and rich natural resources, Guizhou Province is one of the important ecological barriers in China. Guizhou attracts a large number of tourists with its unique ecological environment. Ecotourism has become an important part of Guizhou's economic development. Guizhou has a number of national and provincial nature reserves, which attract tourists for sightseeing and leisure with their unique natural landscapes and rich biological resources. Ecotourism not only promotes the development of local economy, but also raises public awareness of ecological environmental protection. Through the development of ecotourism, Guizhou has not only achieved a win-win situation in terms of economic and social benefits, but also made positive contributions to the protection of natural resources and the inheritance of ecological culture. Guizhou Province attaches great importance to the development of ecotourism and has taken a series of measures to promote the development of ecotourism.

## 2. Effectiveness of ecotourism in promoting tourism economic development in Guizhou Province

### 2.1 Significant increase in tourism revenue

Guizhou Province is rich in ecotourism resources, which attracts a large number of domestic and foreign tourists to come for sightseeing and travelling, directly contributing to the increase in tourism revenue. In recent years, the total income from tourism in Guizhou Province has continued to grow, and ecotourism has become an important force in promoting the development of the tourism economy. For example, Fanjing Mountain, as a world natural heritage, attracts a large number of tourists with its well-preserved primitive forests and peculiar karst landscapes. According to statistics, the annual number of tourists received at Fanjing Mountain has exceeded millions, and the tourism income has reached hundreds of millions of yuan, becoming one of the important sources of tourism income in Guizhou Province. In addition, Huangguoshu Waterfall attracts a large number of tourists with its spectacular water scenery and surrounding natural environment, and with the number of tourists increasing year by year, the catering, lodging, shopping and other related services in the scenic area are also booming as a result of the increased number of tourists, which has led to the rapid growth of the local economy.

### 2.2 Providing a large number of employment opportunities

The development of ecotourism has created a large number of employment opportunities in Guizhou Province, directly driving the employment of local residents. The development of tourism requires a large number of direct jobs, such as tour guides, hotel attendants, catering service staff, etc. It also drives employment in related industries, such as transport and handicraft manufacturing. These jobs provide stable

employment opportunities for local people and increase their income. Meanwhile, the development of tourism has led to the prosperity of the transport industry in Guizhou Province. The increase in tourists requires a large number of transport services, such as passenger cars, taxis and tourist buses. Employment opportunities in the transport sector have increased significantly, and many local residents have achieved employment through working in transport.

### **2.3 Driving the development and upgrading of related industries**

The development of ecotourism has driven the development and upgrading of related industries in Guizhou Province. The development of tourism has promoted the prosperity of catering, accommodation, transport, handicrafts and other industries, as well as the transformation and upgrading of these industries and the improvement of their added value. The development of ecotourism has driven the rapid development of catering and accommodation industries in Guizhou Province. In order to meet the needs of tourism development, Guizhou Province has increased the construction of transport infrastructure. In recent years, Guizhou Province has built and expanded a large number of new highways, railways and airports, which has improved the conditions of tourism transport and the convenience of travelling for tourists, which not only enhances the development of tourism, but also promotes the development of the province's economy. The development of ecotourism has promoted the diversification and upgrading of tourism products in Guizhou Province, which has actively developed a wide range of tourism products such as ecological experience, cultural experience and recreation and health tourism, thus enhancing the added value of tourism products.

## **3. Deficiencies in ecotourism for tourism economic development in Guizhou Province**

### **3.1 Inadequate infrastructure construction and service level**

Although Guizhou Province has made some progress in infrastructure construction in recent years, there are still deficiencies: first, the transport infrastructure is not perfect. The mountainous and hilly terrain of Guizhou leads to difficulties in transport construction, and some tourist attractions are inconveniently accessible, with high time costs for tourists to arrive and leave scenic spots. Especially in some remote scenic spots, the transport facilities are even more backward, limiting the growth of the number of tourists.

Secondly, tourism supporting facilities are insufficient. The supporting facilities of some scenic spots, such as catering, accommodation, sanitation and other infrastructures, are not perfect, making it difficult to meet the needs of tourists. This not only affects tourists' traveling experience, but also limits the development potential of tourism. Thirdly,

The service level needs to be upgraded. The tourism service level of some scenic spots is low, and the professionalism and service awareness of tour guides, attendants and other practitioners need to be improved, making it difficult to provide quality tourism services, which can easily lead to a decline in tourists' satisfaction and affect the reputation and attractiveness of scenic spots.

### **3.2 Insufficient ecological environmental protection and sustainable development**

With the rapid development of tourism, ecological environmental protection and sustainable development are facing certain challenges: firstly, overdevelopment and environmental damage. Some scenic spots are over-developed in the process of development, causing certain damage to the ecological environment. The second is the improper treatment of rubbish and sewage. With the increase in the number of tourists, the problem of rubbish and sewage treatment in scenic spots is becoming more and more prominent. Some scenic spots have imperfect rubbish and sewage treatment facilities, leading to serious environmental pollution problems, affecting the ecological environment of scenic spots and the experience of tourists. Third, the popularity of the concept of ecotourism is insufficient. Some scenic spots and tourists are not popular enough with the concept of eco-tourism, lack of awareness and attention to ecological environmental protection, leading to littering, destruction of vegetation and other uncivilised behaviours in the process of tourism, affecting the sustainable development of scenic spots.

### **3.3 Inadequate tourism products and marketing**

There are deficiencies in tourism products and marketing there, which affect the development potential of the tourism industry. It is

mainly reflected in the following aspects: Firstly, tourism products are single and insufficiently innovative. The tourism products of some scenic spots are relatively single and lack of innovation, making it difficult to meet the needs of tourists at different levels. Secondly, the market promotion is not strong enough. Guizhou Province in the tourism market promotion investment needs to be improved, publicity means and channels are relatively single, it is difficult to comprehensively demonstrate Guizhou's rich tourism resources and unique cultural charms. Third, the brand building is not strong. Guizhou province's tourism brand building efforts are not enough, the lack of influential tourism brands and iconic scenic spots, it is difficult to form a strong brand effect in the domestic and international tourism market.

## **4. Paths for ecotourism to promote tourism economic development in Guizhou Province**

### **4.1 Strengthening infrastructure development and service level**

First, increase investment in transport infrastructure. Investment in tourism transport infrastructure should be increased to improve the transport network, like road, railways and airways to enhance the accessibility of scenic spots. Secondly, the level of tourism supporting facilities should be upgraded. Catering, accommodation, sanitation and other infrastructures in scenic spots should be improved to enhance tourists' travelling experience. The quality and standard of service can be improved by introducing branded chain hotels and catering enterprises to meet the needs of tourists at different levels. Thirdly, the training of tourism service personnel should be strengthened. Strengthen the training of tour guides, waiters and other practitioners, improve their professionalism and service awareness, enhance the comprehensive quality of practitioners, provide quality tourism services, and improve the satisfaction of tourists.

### **4.2 Adhering to ecological priority and scientific planning for tourism development**

First, improve the rubbish and sewage treatment facilities. Increase investment in rubbish and sewage treatment facilities in scenic spots, build a perfect rubbish classification and treatment system, ensure that rubbish and sewage in scenic spots are effectively treated, and reduce environmental pollution. Second, strengthen environmental protection publicity for tourists, advocate rubbish classification and reduction, and enhance tourists' awareness of environmental protection. Third, popularise the concept of eco-tourism and strengthen environmental education. Strengthen the popularisation and publicity of the concept of eco-tourism and convey the importance of eco-environmental protection to tourists through various channels. This can be done by setting up environmental protection publicity slogans and distributing environmental protection publicity materials to raise tourists' awareness of environmental protection and advocate civilised tourism behaviour.

### **4.3 Enriching tourism products and expanding publicity channels**

First, increase the development and innovation of tourism products, enrich the variety of tourism products and meet the needs of tourists at different levels. The second is to strengthen the updating and upgrading of tourism products to improve the attractiveness and competitiveness of scenic spots. Thirdly, it should increase investment in the promotion of the tourism market, expand publicity channels, and comprehensively display Guizhou's tourism resources and cultural charms. Fourthly, brand building should be strengthened to create iconic scenic spots. Strengthen the construction of tourism brands, create influential tourism brands and iconic scenic spots to enhance the brand effect of Guizhou tourism.

## **References**

- [1] Zhang Xiaoli. Ecotourism [M]. Beijing: Higher Education Press,2018
- [2] Wang Kaijun. Theory and practice of sustainable tourism development [M]. Beijing: Science Press,2019
- [3] Li Hong. Ecotourism management [M]. Beijing: People's Publishing House,2017
- [4] Li Wei. Green development and ecotourism [M]. Beijing: China Environmental Science Press,2018
- [5] Yang Song. Social and environmental effects of ecotourism [M]. Beijing: Commercial Press,2016
- [6] Zhang Jianhua. Research on Guizhou Karst Landscape and Ecotourism Development [M]. Guiyang: Guizhou University Press,2020
- [7] Liu Haiyun. China's ecotourism development path and policy analysis [M]. Beijing: Social Science Literature Press,2019